

BÀI TẬP TIẾNG ANH

LỚP

9

Có đáp án



BUI VĂN VINH (Chủ biên)

DƯƠNG THỊ HỒNG DIỆP

BÀI TẬP TIẾNG ANH LỚP 9

CÓ ĐÁP ÁN

(Theo chương trình Tiếng Anh mới nhất của Bộ giáo dục và Đào tạo)

NHÀ XUẤT BẢN ĐẠI HỌC QUỐC GIA HÀ NỘI

LỜI NÓI ĐẦU

Sách **Bài tập Tiếng Anh lớp 9** dựa vào phương pháp dạy ngôn ngữ giao tiếp (Communicative Language Teaching Method), sách tập trung vào việc phát triển các kỹ năng ngôn ngữ cho học sinh Trung học cơ sở thông qua các dạng bài bổ ích, trong đó tập trung vào luyện ngữ âm, từ vựng, kỹ năng đọc hiểu, viết và sử dụng ngôn ngữ tổng hợp thông qua các bài kiểm tra (Tests), giúp cho người học có khả năng tổng hợp kiến thức hiệu quả nhất.

Mỗi bài học trong cuốn sách **Bài tập Tiếng Anh lớp 9** được biên soạn theo chủ điểm quen thuộc với học sinh Trung học cơ sở.

Mỗi đơn vị bài học được chia thành 3 mục lớn như sau:

PART 1: GRAMMAR REVIEW

PART 2: PRATICE

A. PHONETICS

B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

C. READING

D. WRITING

PART 3: TEST YOURSELF

Sách **Bài tập Tiếng Anh lớp 9** được biên soạn dựa trên thực tiễn của việc dạy và học tiếng Anh. Đây là nguồn tài liệu tham khảo bổ ích cho giáo viên và học sinh và rất thiết thực trong giao lưu quốc tế nhằm nâng cao khả năng sử dụng ngôn ngữ tiếng Anh trong thời kỳ hội nhập. Tác giả mong nhận được những ý kiến đóng góp của các nhà giáo, đồng nghiệp, phụ huynh học sinh và độc giả quan tâm để cuốn sách ngày một hoàn thiện hơn.

Unit
1

LOCAL ENVIRONMENT

PART 1: GRAMMAR REVIEW

1. COMPLEX SENTENCES (CÂU PHỨC)

Câu phức là câu có một mệnh đề chính hay còn gọi là mệnh đề độc lập và một hay nhiều mệnh đề phụ. Hai mệnh đề thường nối với nhau bởi dấu phẩy hoặc các liên từ.

a. **Dependent clauses of purpose** (*Mệnh đề phụ chỉ mục đích*)

- **So that/ in order that** (để mà): là mệnh đề phụ được dùng để chỉ mục đích của hành động ở mệnh đề chính.

Ex: Some people eat **in order that** they may live.

She learnt hard **so that** she might get the scholarship.

b. **Dependent clauses of reason** (*Mệnh đề phụ chỉ lý do*)

- **because, since** (do, vì, bởi vì): là mệnh đề phụ được dùng để chỉ lý do của hành động ở mệnh đề chính.

Ex: The flight to London was cancelled **because** the weather was bad.

She didn't go to school **since** she got ill.

c. **Dependent clauses of time** (*Mệnh đề phụ chỉ thời gian*)

- **when; while; after; before; as soon as;**: là các từ bắt đầu đứng trước mệnh đề phụ chỉ thời gian.

Ex: Lets go for a pizza **after** we go to the natural history museum.

It'll be wonderful **when** scientists have found a cure for cancer.

The villagers have to dry the buffalo skin under the sun **before** they make the drumheads.

d. **Dependent clauses of contrast** (*Mệnh đề phụ chỉ sự tương phản*)

- **Though/ although/ even though** (dù, mặc dù, cho dù): là các từ bắt đầu đứng trước các mệnh đề phụ chỉ sự tương phản của hai hành động trong cùng một câu.

Ex: Although I learnt hard, I didn't get high grades.

They would like to go out, **though** it is raining

PART 2: PRACTICE

A. PHONETICS AND PHONOLOGY

I. Find the word which has different sound in the underlined part.

- | | | | |
|---------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. A. <u>e</u> ndangered | B. <u>g</u> eneration | C. <u>a</u> cept | D. <u>m</u> emorable |
| 2. A. <u>t</u> raditional | B. <u>a</u> uthority | C. <u>h</u> andicraft | D. <u>g</u> randparent |
| 3. A. <u>e</u> nvironment | B. <u>r</u> epat | C. <u>e</u> mbroider | D. <u>t</u> ransfer |
| 4. A. <u>p</u> ottery | B. <u>o</u> pinion | C. <u>c</u> ommunicate | D. <u>b</u> ehavio <u>r</u> |
| 5. A. <u>h</u> andicraft | B. <u>p</u> ublish | C. <u>r</u> emind | D. <u>h</u> istorical |

II. Choose a word in each line that has different stress pattern.

- | | | | |
|------------------|-----------------|----------------|--------------|
| 1. A. surface | B. attraction | C. bamboo | D. technique |
| 2. A. transfer | B. publish | C. accept | D. remind |
| 3. A. handicraft | B. cultural | C. museum | D. sculpture |
| 4. A. opinion | B. embroider | C. department | D. drumhead |
| 5. A. workshop | B. authenticity | C. grandparent | D. village |

B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

I. Give the correct form of the words in capital.

- Children have to have moral lessons at school to avoid behavior of _____ in the future. (**MORALITY**)
- If you don't go to work regularly, you will be punished for _____ in work. (**REGULARITY**)
- In our country, men and women are equal. No one supports sexual _____. (**EQUALITY**)
- Every young man undergoing military training is bound to experience _____. (**COMFORT**)
- Tom's failure was due not to _____ but to his own mistakes. (**FORTUNE**)
- He is a notorious _____ who robbed a bank yesterday. (**CRIME**)
- It is forbidden to hunt for that kind of bird. It has been listed as one of the _____ species. (**DANGER**)
- The weather was terrible, so we had a very _____ holiday. (**PLEASE**)
- The _____ of the new guest caused trouble to me. (**ARRIVE**)
- _____ to the school is by examination only. (**ADMIT**)
- He wanted a divorce because his wife had been _____. (**FAITH**)
- I didn't know who it was- with a mask on, she was completely _____. (**RECOGNIZE**)
- "This is not a good essay," said the lecture. "I find your arguments _____". (**CONVINCE**)
- Traveling in an aeroplane for the first time was a _____ experience. (**MEMORY**)

15. In winter it is important for farmers to provide food and _____ for their animals. (WARM)

II. Choose the best one (A, B, C or D) to complete the sentence.

1. In 1990, due to the change of the economic situation, Dong Ho paintings were difficult to sell and many _____ quit their job.
A. craftsmen B. crafts C. craftsmanship D. craft unions
2. The Van Phuc silk producers have expended their silk garment goods _____ they can satisfy the varied demand for their silk.
A. so that B. in order to C. despite D. because
3. It turned out that we _____ rushed to the airport as the plane was delayed by several hours.
A. hadn't B. should have C. needn't have D. mustn't
4. Weaving mats in Dinh Yen, Dong Thap used to be sold in the "ghost" markets set up at night and operate up to early morning _____ the government built a new market five years ago.
A. after B. as soon as C. when D. until
5. Since changing the way of production, many craftsmen have voluntarily joined together to for _____.
A. cooperatives B. cooperative C. cooperates D. cooperation
6. I don't like to ask people for help but I wonder if you could _____ me a favour.
A. make B. do C. find D. pick
7. Nowadays, Tan Chau artisans can produce silk of multiple colours _____ they can meet customers' demands.
A. but B. in order C. so D. so that
8. Situated on the bank of the Duong river, the village was famous for the _____ of making Dong Ho paintings.
A. manufacture B. activity C. craft D. production
9. There was no _____ in continuing for him the race was over.
A. value B. worth C. point D. profit
10. _____ a large number of the country's crafts villages are suffering from a shortage of human resources and difficulties in building brand recognition, many international organizations have had projects to help them.
A. Even B. Although C. However D. But
11. Vietnamese traditional _____ is done with a simple hammer and chisel.
A. sculptured feature B. sculptor
C. sculpture pieces D. sculpture
12. This cloth _____ very thin.
A. feels B. touches C. holds D. handles
13. It was only _____ he told me his surname that I realized that we had been to the same school.
A. until B. when C. since D. then

14. _____ a majority of Vietnamese small and medium enterprises do not have in-house designers or specialized design staff, they have to hire freelance designers.
A. While B. Since C. Due to D. Despite the fact
15. Now, at the age of over 80, the artisan is leaving the craft to his descendants with the desire to _____ this ancient craft.
A. change B. consider C. preserve D. reserve
16. For that artisans, making the paintings is a career _____ it supports the life of many generations of the family.
A. because of B. although C. so that D. because
17. The four-ton statue of hero Tran Vu, _____ in 1667, still stands in Quan Thanh Temple.
A. to cast B. to be vast C. cast D. casting
18. Her business must be going rather well, by _____ the car she drives.
A. deducing B. deciding C. inferring D. judging
19. I'm afraid this vase is anything but antique - In fact, it's _____.
A. pointless B. worthless C. meaningless D. hopeless
20. He couldn't _____ his father that he was telling the truth.
A. admit B. confide C. trust D. convince

III. Find a word or a phrase that means.

1. think of (an idea, a plan, etc.)

2. connect by phone

3. people who do skilled work, making things with their hands

4. an interesting or enjoyable place to go or thing to do

5. a particular place

6. make someone remember or think about something

7. walk around a place to see what is there

8. a thing which is skillfully made with your hands

9. start something (a business, an organization, etc.)

10. take control of something (a business, an organization, etc.)

IV. Complete the sentences with suitable subordinators from the box.

because	before	although	as soon as	so that	while
----------------	---------------	-----------------	-------------------	----------------	--------------

- _____ I go out tonight, I will have to finish this essay.
- Phong burnt his hand _____ he was cooking dinner.
- Laura always gets up early every morning _____ she's not late for her work.
- Mr. Harrison seems to have a lot of money _____ he lives in a luxurious house.
- _____ I was waiting for the bus, I saw some foreign tourists.
- They didn't win the game _____ they played very well.
- The children are very excited _____ they're going to visit a craft village this weekend.
- We will tell Alice about the trip _____ we meet her.
- _____ it rained a lot, they enjoyed their holiday.
- I bought a new pair of glasses _____ I can see better.

V. Read and choose the best word for each sentence.

Christianity	mainland	Ocean	searching
earn	mixed	pineapples	serious
explorer	necklace	races	traditions

- Out in the Pacific _____, 3700 kilometers from Los Angeles, are the islands of Hawaii, the 50th state of the United States.
- In 1778, Captain James Cook, the great English _____, visited Hawaii.
- Captain Cook put Hawaii on his maps of the Pacific. Ships _____ for whales began stopping there for supplies.
- In 1820, a small group of people from the eastern United States came to teach the Hawaiian people about _____.
- These people started farms in Hawaii to grow sugarcane and, later, _____.
- People from the various groups have married each other, so today the groups are partly _____.
- A *lei* is a long _____ made from beautiful fresh flowers. Hawaiian people give these to visitors.
- Hawaiians _____ most of their money from tourists.
- Sometimes when people from different countries, _____, and traditions live together, there are problems.
- Hawaii has many few _____ problems. In general, the people of Hawaii have learned to live together on those beautiful islands in peace.

VI. Complete each of the following sentences using the correct form of a phrasal verb from the box.

live on	look through	pass down	set off	turn down
close down	come back	deal with	get up	keep up with

1. They offered her a trip to Europe but she it _____.
2. He has _____ the report and found nothing interesting.
3. Phong walks too fast and it's really hard to _____ him.
4. These traditional stories have been _____ from parents to children over many generations.
5. My sister is an early bird. She _____ at 7 o'clock every day of the week.
6. We'll _____ for Tay Ho village at 9 o'clock and arrive at 10 o'clock.
7. When I was a student, I _____ small allowances from my parents.
8. The government must now _____ the preservation of traditional craft villages.
9. The banks have _____ a lot of branches in villages over the last few years.
10. Many foreign tourists decided to _____ Viet Nam for another holiday.

C. READING

I. Read the passage and fill in each blank with the correct form of the verbs from the box.

brought	however	shaping	materials	works
imported	blow	performing	fear	representing

Marble Mountains is a group of five smaller mountains (1)_____ Metal, Wood, Water, Fire and Earth. It is also a travel itinerary linking Da Nang City to the ancient town of Hoi An and Hue City. As the name suggests the Marble Mountains used to be a place providing input (2)_____ for craftsmen in the village, but the local government banned marble exploitation (3)_____ that the five mountains could disappear.

Most of the marble for the village now comes from northern provinces such as Ninh Binh, Thanh Hoa and Thai Nguyen. As a further step to diversify products, the marble fine arts village has (4)_____ marble from Pakistan.

As far as I know, the man who (5)_____ marble craftsmanship to the region came from Thanh Hoa, and most craftsmen in the village had handed down the craft from generation to generation. There are some 3,000 handicraft workers in Non Nuoc village. (6)_____, there are only 70 skillful craftsmen who can (7)_____ souls into marble sculptures after other workers have finished (8)_____ the Products.

In the shops along the highway, you can see different marble products in all shapes and sizes, from contemporary (9)_____ to religious sculptures. And of course you will have a chance to see craftsmen (10)_____ their art and turning soulless marble into sophisticated sculpture products.

II. Read the following and choose the best answer.

There are many (1)_____ villages in Viet Nam, but Quat Dong village in Ha Noi is widely known (2)_____ its products of high (3)_____.

Embroidery has been developing around here (4)_____ the 17th century. In the past, local skilled artisans were chosen to make sophisticated embroidered (5)_____ for the Vietnamese King, Queen and other Royal family members. The first man who taught the local people how to embroider was Dr. Le Cong Hanh, who lived during the Le dynasty. He learned how to embroider while on a trip to China (6)_____ an envoy, and taught the villagers of Quat Dong upon his (7)_____. Although these *skills* eventually spread (8)

_____ the country, the Quat Dong's artisans' creations are still the most appreciated. In (9)_____ to create beautiful embroideries, an artisan must be patient, careful and have an eye for **design**, along with clever hands. Nowadays, Quat Dong products may range from clothes, bags, pillowcases, to paintings and decorations, which are (10)_____ to many countries.

- | | | | |
|----------------|------------|---------------|---------------|
| 1. A. number | B. exist | C. embroidery | D. population |
| 2. A. for | B. border | C. region | D. place |
| 3. A. includes | B. insists | C. quality | D. consists |
| 4. A. around | B. over | C. on | D. since |
| 5. A. costumes | B. tell | C. name | D. separate |
| 6. A. good | B. as | C. better | D. well |
| 7. A. another | B. others | C. return | D. anothers |
| 8. A. across | B. hill | C. village | D. downtown |
| 9. A. quarter | B. effort | C. order | D. notice |
| 10. A. wonder | B. cause | C. true | D. exported |

D. WRITING

I. Rewrite each sentence so that it contains the word or words in capitals, and so that the meaning stays the same.

- | | |
|---|---------------|
| 1. Everyone thought the book was written by the princess herself. | HAVE |
| <hr/> | |
| 2. I can't lift this table on my own. | UNLESS |
| <hr/> | |
| 3. I won't stay in this job, not even for double the salary. | IF |
| <hr/> | |
| 4. The coins are believed to have been buried for safe keeping. | IT |
| <hr/> | |
| 5. If you insist on eating so fast, of course you get in indigestion. | WILL |
| <hr/> | |
| 6. It's pity! You aren't going to Ann's party. | WISH |
| <hr/> | |
| 7. Someone punches Sam in the face at a football match. | GOT |
| <hr/> | |
| 8. If you found the missing money, what would you do? | WERE |
| <hr/> | |
| 9. They suspended Jackson for the next two matches. | BANNED |
| <hr/> | |
| 10. Please come this way, and you'll see if Mr. Francis is in. | WILL |
| <hr/> | |

II. By using the words in brackets, join each of the following sentences into logical ones. You may need to change some of the words.

1. A student has studied English for a few years. He may have a vocabulary of thousands of words. **(who)**

2. Between formal and colloquial English there is unmarked English. It is neither so literary and serious as formal English, nor so casual and free as colloquial English. **(which)**

3. He bought a jeep. His friend advised him against it. **(although)**

4. Good writing requires general and abstract words as well as specific and concrete ones. It is the latter that make writing vivid, real and clear. **(though)**

5. It was raining hard. They could not work in the fields. **(so ... that)**

6. The politician is concerned with successful elections. The statesman is interested in the future of his people. **(whereas)**

7. The results of the experiment were successful. The school refused to give any help. **(although)**

8. He chose to study computer science. Computer science has good employment prospects. **(because of)**

9. Mary walked very slowly. She did not catch the train. **(if)**

10. He is not coming. The meeting will be put off till next week. **(in the event of)**

PART 3: TEST YOURSELF

I. Choose a word in each line that has different stress pattern.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|---------------|----------------|----------------|
| 1. A. bamboo | B. village | C. workshop | D. famous |
| 2. A. business | B. chocolate | C. grandparent | D. experience |
| 3. A. communicate | B. generation | C. historical | D. environment |
| 4. A. handicraft | B. department | C. embroider | D. opinion |
| 5. A. transfer | B. accept | C. publish | D. remind |
| 6. A. department | B. historical | C. technique | D. pottery |
| 7. A. prosperity | B. experience | C. complicated | D. cooperate |
| 8. A. balloon | B. craftsmen | C. markets | D. local |
| 9. A. sculpture | B. temperate | C. repeat | D. culture |
| 10. A. embroidery | B. lantern | C. formation | D. behavior |

II. Choose the best one (A, B, C or D) to complete the sentence.

- Every house in the street has been demolished.
A. exploded B. turn up C. removed D. turn down
- In 1990, due to the change of the economic situation, many Dong Ho cooperatives had to _____.
A. close down B. shut C. close D. close in
- I put the scarf with my mother's _____, intending to pay for it on my way out.
A. purchases B. material C. objects D. expenditures
- Craftsmen have to _____ the domestic and international markets so that they needn't depend on the middlemen for their sales.
A. find out B. find out about C. find D. find about
- She _____ her husband's job for his ill health.
A. accused B. blamed C. caused D. claimed
- Making rice paper _____ jobs and income for many locals, help many families out of poverty and become well-off.
A. applies for B. creates C. keeps D. gets
- This ring is only made of plastic so it's quite _____.
A. valuable B. invaluable C. worthless D. priceless
- Craft village are becoming popular _____ in Viet Nam.
A. tour attractiveness B. physical attraction
C. tourism attractions D. tourist attraction
- He got an excellent grade in his examination _____ the fact that he had not worked particularly hard.
A. on account of B. because C. in spite of D. although
- The artisan is delighted to _____ to you the craft of creating prints in an old-age style.
A. express B. provide C. demonstrate D. explain

11. The government has recently _____ the building in the old section of the city.
A. reformed B. adjusted C. restored D. modified
12. The traditional craft has _____ from generation to generation.
A. been passed down B. been passed by
C. passed down D. passed
13. In order to buy his house, he had to obtain a large _____ from his bank.
A. loan B. finance C. capital D. debt
14. The bronze casting craft in Viet Nam dated back from the age of King An Duong Vuong _____ ancient bronze arrowheads were made.
A. so B. when C. because D. although
15. In the past, local _____ were chosen to make sophisticated embroidered costumes for the Vietnamese King, Queen and other Royal family members.
A. skillful artists B. skilled artisans C. skill workers D. skillfully works

III. Give the correct form of the words in brackets.

1. I have little _____ of going abroad this year. (EXPECT)
2. Almost everybody is interested in _____. (SWIM)
3. Don't make mistakes in your next _____. (WRITE)
4. Water in an _____ liquid. (ODOUR)
5. The banks in this city are very efficient and give a speedy _____. (SERVE)
6. She always listens _____ to what she is told. (ATTENTION)
7. In his family, he is a _____ child. (TROUBLE)
8. There has been a _____ improvement in her writing. (NOTICE)
9. The price of the house includes many existing _____ and fittings. (FIX)
10. It was _____ of me to mislead you like that. (FORGIVE)
11. They were arguing with each other. They had a strong _____. (AGREEMENT)
12. No one knew what had happened to the film star. Her sudden _____ remains a mystery. (APPEAR)
13. We had not been properly informed. What we have is some _____. (INFORMATION)
14. Was the decision of the judge fair? If not, it was an obvious _____. (JUSTICE)
15. I don't want to bother you by causing you any unnecessary _____. (CONVENIENCE)

IV. Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given.

1. Where did you find out about Disneyland Resort? (get)
=> Where _____?
2. When did you get up this morning? (out of)
=> When _____?
3. I'll look through this leaflet to see what activities are organised at this attraction. (read)
=> I'll _____.

4. They're going to bring out a guidebook to different beauty spots in Viet Nam. (**publish**)

=> **They're** _____?

5. I'm looking forward to the weekend. (**thinking**)

=> **I'm** _____.

V. Read the passage and fill in the blanks with the given words in the box.

surprising	that	tool	down	rely
shape	home	because	which	being

Bau Truc pottery village of Cham village ethnic minority is one of the oldest pottery villages in Southeast Asia. It's located about 10 km in the South of Phan Rang town. The small village is (1)_____ to more than 400 families, of (2)_____ 85% are in the traditional pottery business. The style is said to be handed (3)_____ from Po Klong Chan, one of their ancestors from the immemorial time.

People in Bau Truc use their skillful hands, bamboo-made circles and shells to create priceless works. It is (4)_____ that while the Kinh people have switched to using wheel as an indispensable (5)_____, their Cham counterparts, on the contrary, still (6)_____ on talent hands and simple tools. To create a pottery product, a Cham craftsman only needs an anvil, not a potter's wheel, and other simple equipment and moulds and then uses hands to (7)_____ pieces of clay into the works he wants.

The clay is taken is taken from the banks of the Quao River and is flexible, durable when (8)_____ fired. The skills needed to mix sand with the clay are also various. The amount of sand mixed with the plastic material is dependent on what the pottery used for and the sizes. For these seasons, Bau Truc pottery is quite different from pottery elsewhere. For example, water jars made in Bau truc pottery are always favoured by people in dry and sunny areas (9)_____ the temperature of the water in the jars is always one centigrade cooler than (10)_____ outside.

VI. Read the passage, and choose the correct answer A, B, C or D for each question.

In the Mekong Delta, Long Dinh village of Tien Giang province is famous for its traditional craft of weaving flowered mats. The mat's high quality makes them popular domestically, and they are also exported to markets worldwide including Korea, Japan and America.

In spite of its well-established reputation for this traditional craft, mat weaving only started here some 50 years ago. It was first introduced by immigrants from Kim Son, a famous mat weaving village in the northern province of Ninh Binh. However, the technique of weaving sedge mats in Long Dinh, as compared with other places in the South, is somewhat different. Long Dinh branded mats are thicker and have more attractive colours and patterns.

Weaving sedge mats is similar to growing rice. Long Dinh mat production mainly occurs during the dry season, from January to April. Weavers have to work their hardest in May and June, otherwise, when the rainy season starts in July, they will have to put off finishing their products till the next dry season. No matter how much work it requires, Long Dinh mat producers stick with this occupation, as it brings a higher income than growing rice.

This trade provides employment for thousands of local labourers. At present, nearly 1,000 households in Long Dinh village live on weaving mats. To better meet market demands, Long Dinh mat weavers have created more products in addition to the traditional sedge mats.

Particularly, they are producing a new type of mat made from the dried stalks of water hyacinth, a common material in the Mekong Delta.

Thanks to the planning and further investment, the mat weaving occupation has indeed brought in more income for local residents. Their living standards have improved considerably, resulting in better conditions for the whole village.

1. In order to meet market demands, artisans in Long Dinh _____.
 - A. try to produce various types of products
 - B. stop producing the traditional sedge mats
 - C. produce new Products from rare material
 - D. for thousands of local labourers
2. We can infer from the sentence “Weaving sedge mats is similar to growing rice” that _____.
 - A. both bring similar income
 - B. both occur at the same time
 - C. both depend on weather conditions
 - D. both occur on the same land
3. Despite difficulties, people in Long Dinh try to follow the craft because _____.
 - A. they can make the techniques of weaving different
 - B. they can earn more money than growing rice
 - C. they can have jobs in the rainy months
 - D. they can go to Korea, Japan and America
4. We can infer from the passage that _____.
 - A. the craft contributes much to the village economy
 - B. most of the households in Long Dinh village live on weaving mats
 - C. the new technique makes labourers work in the dry season
 - D. Long Dinh mat production is only well-known in foreign markets
5. All of the following are true about the craft in Long Dinh EXCEPT that _____.
 - A. the techniques are a little bit different from those in other regions
 - B. the mats have more attractive colours and designs
 - C. it has the origin from Kim Son, Ninh Binh
 - D. it has had the reputation for more than 50 years

Unit 2

CITY LIFE

PART 1: GRAMMAR REVIEW

1. SO SÁNH BẰNG

Form 1:

Ex: He is **as tall as** his father.

S + be/ V + as + adj/ adv + as + noun/ pronoun

Form 2:

Ex: My house is **the same height as** his.

S + V + the same + noun + as + noun/ pronoun

Form 3: (giống về vẻ bề ngoài)

S1 + be + like + S2
= S1 and S2 + be + alike

Ex: Her house is **like** your house.

= Her house and your house are **alike**.

Form 4:

S1 + be + similar to + S2
= S1 and S2 + be + similar

Ex: Her house is **similar to** your house.

= Her house and your house are **similar**.

2. SO SÁNH HƠN

a. Short Adj/ Adv (tính từ/ trạng từ ngắn): là những từ có 1 âm tiết và những từ có 2 âm tiết kết thúc tận cùng là “y” => ngắn: early, healthy, happy, pretty, dry, ...

Form:

S + be/V + adj/ adv - er + than + O

Ex: She is **fatter than** her mother.

b. Long Adj/ Adv (tính từ/ trạng từ dài): là những từ có 2 âm tiết trở lên.

Form:

S + be/V + more + adj/ adv + than + O

Ex: He is **more generous than** his brother.

Note: Trước so sánh hơn có thể có “much”, “far”, “so”, “a little”, “a lot”, “a bit”

Ex: That car is **much more expensive than** that motorbike.

3. SO SÁNH NHẤT

a. Short Adj/ Adv:

Form:

S + be/V + the adj/ adv - est +

Ex: Vinh is **the tallest** in our class.

b. Long Adj/ Adv: là những từ có 2 âm tiết trở lên.

Form:

S + be/V + the most adj/ adv +

Ex: Diep is **the most attractive girl** in their team.

Note:

Một số Adj, Adv so sánh bất quy tắc:

Adj	So sánh hơn	So sánh nhất
good/well	better	best
bad	worse	worst
little	less	least
much / many	more	most
far (place + time)	further	furthest
far (place)	farther	farthest
late (time)	later	latest
near (place)	nearer	nearest
old (people and things)	older/elder	oldest/eldest

PART 2: PRACTICE

A. PHONETICS AND PHONOLOGY

I. Find the word which has a different sound in the underlined part.

- A. wipe B. alive C. micro D. link
- A. cleaner B. threat C. ahead D. instead
- A. breathe B. ethane C. thank D. healthy
- A. choose B. moon C. food D. look
- A. burden B. survice C. curtain D. furnish
- A. camel B. sandy C. travel D. stable
- A. dune B. hummock C. scrublands D. gun
- A. basic B. desert C. president D. season
- A. separate B. network C. dessert D. crest
- A. stretches B. slopes C. ranges D. faces

II. Choose a word in each line that has different stress pattern.

1. A. education B. facility C. development D. intelligence
2. A. metropolitan B. organization C. university D. multicultural
3. A. fascinate B. restaurant C. expensive D. difference
4. A. feature B. ancient C. drawback D. conduct
5. A. fabulous B. pagoda C. determine D. convenient

B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

I. Choose the best one (A, B, C or D) to complete the sentence.

1. Villagers are more kind, friendly and warm-hearted than city _____.
A. dwellers B. foreigners C. beginners D. movers
2. You can see the _____ of the suburbs in Ho Chi Minh City with many apartment buildings, supermarkets, shopping centres, and schools.
A. urban area B. convenience C. urban sprawl D. living condition
3. Dong Khoi Street is the main shopping street in the _____ of downtown in Ho Chi Minh City.
A. mind B. heart C. head D. spot
4. It is considered that life in a city is wonderful and _____.
A. funny B. boring C. enjoyable D. helpful
5. No city in America has _____ monuments and museums into one area as Washington, DC.
A. as much B. such many C. as many D. a few
6. My passport _____ last month, so I will have to get a new one.
A. elapsed B. expired C. ended D. terminated
7. The department is also deeply _____ in various improvement schemes.
A. connected B. entailed C. involved D. implied
8. His answer was so confused that I could hardly make any _____ of it at all.
A. interpretation B. meaning C. intelligibility D. sense
9. The main attraction of the job was that it offered the _____ to do the research.
A. possibility B. proposal C. opportunity D. prospect
10. I wish you'd tell me what I _____ do in this difficult situation.
A. shall B. would C. should D. ought
11. A competitor may submit any number of entries _____, each one is accompanied by a packet top.
A. supposing B. notwithstanding C. assuredly D. provided
12. They always kept on good _____ with their next-door neighbours for the children's sake.
A. friendship B. relations C. will D. terms
13. He earns his living by _____ old paintings.
A. reviving B. restoring C. reforming D. replenishing
14. Hotel rooms must be _____ by noon, but luggage may be left with the porter.
A. vacated B. evacuated C. abandoned D. left

15. The majority of nurses are women, but in the higher ranks of the medical profession women are in a _____.

- A. rarity B. minority C. scarcity D. minimum

II. Complete each of the following sentences with comparatives or superlatives. Add “the” where necessary.

1. This is (**good**)_____ food I’ve ever eaten in this country.
2. Peter’s new haircut is (**trendy**)_____ than the previous one.
3. The building looks much (**nice**)_____ in green than the previous white.
4. I had to drive my car along (**narrow**)_____ road in the region.
5. Nam’s house is (**far**)_____ from the city centre than my house.
6. In my opinion, living in the city is (**hard**)_____ than living in the country.
7. I think this is (**noisy**)_____ part of the city.
8. This place was (dangerous)_____ than we thought.
9. Could you show me the way to (**near**)_____ bus stop?
10. The trip to Nha Trang City was (**interesting**)_____ for us.

III. Give the correct form of the word in capital.

1. Ha Noi, _____ the Old Quarter, become a perfect city for walking with handicraft shops, street food, etc. **ESPECIAL**
2. Ha Long Bay, which means descending dragon, is the _____ heritage of the world with 1,6000 limestone islands. **NATURE**
3. Below Sa Pa are _____ rice terraces in the endless valley. **PICTURE**
4. Besides the beach, the main _____ in Da Nang is the Museum of Cham Sculpture with the world’s largest collection of Cham artefacts. **ATTRACT**
5. Hue becomes one of the most _____ destinations for travelers to Viet Nam with the number of three million tourists a year. **POPULARITY**
6. Hoi An used to be one of the _____ ports of Southeast Asia, which were used by the Japanese, Portuguese, Dutch, French and Chinese merchants. **BUSY**
7. Nha Trang, a _____ coastal city in Central Viet Nam, is generally recognized as Viet Nam’s main beach destination. **DELIGHT**
8. Formerly known as Saigon, Ho Chi Minh City is a metropolis which is still young but very _____. **DYNAMIST**
9. The Mekong Delta is well-known for its busy waterways with many rivers, canals and streams _____ through the region. **FLOW**
10. Phu Quoc Island is the _____ place for riding, snorkeling, scuba diving, and relaxing. **IDEA**

IV. Complete each of the following sentences using the correct form of a phrasal verb from the box.

showed round	put down	grew up	turned off	thought over
turned down	look up	look forward to	lived up to	get on with

1. Miss Diep didn't know the correct spelling so she had to _____ it in the dictionary.
2. She's _____ it _____ and has made up her mind; she's going to take the job in New York.
3. Can you _____ your name, telephone number and email address _____ in the book, please?
4. My hotel was amazing and it _____ all my expectations.
5. Mark was born in the East End, but he _____ in the West End.
6. The guide _____ us _____ the historic parts of the city.
7. He doesn't know why she _____ his invitation to the party.
8. Vinh is very friendly. He _____ most of my friends.
9. We are all _____ seeing our grandparents again.
10. Miss Hang _____ the Music _____ and went to bed because it was quite late.

C. READING

I. Read the text, and fill in the blanks with the suitable words.

and	can	busier	located	However
described	Therefore	According	makes	more

City is often (1)_____ as a large and a highly populated area. (2)_____, city life is living in a large populated, technologically advanced area. (3)_____ to World Health Organization, 54% of the world's population lived in urban areas by 2014. A city is technologically (4)_____ advanced and complex than the countryside. Therefore, there are many advantages in living in a city. Technology (5)_____ our lives easy in a City. Cities have many facilities like high-quality hospitals, educational institutes, banks, shops (6)_____ other business institutes. This makes our life easy as we (7)_____ access the facilities provided by these institutes and organizations without delay. Moreover, many employment opportunities are available in the City as many major business institutes, factories are (8)_____ here. City life also gives us access to developed infrastructure facilities, like water, electricity, telecommunication and transportation facilities.

(9)_____, we can also notice a difference in the behavior of the people living in the city. City dwellers tend to be (10)_____, ambitious and distant compared to the village folk.

II. Read the passage, and choose the correct answer A, B, C or D for each question.

With a (1)_____ of about 2.6 million people, Vancouver is the largest City in Western Canada. Vancouver is in the Southwest of Canada, and it is only a few hours of driving away from the American (2)_____.

Vancouver is popular because it (3)_____ so many things. It is a huge, modern City. On the other hand, it is also one of North America's most beautiful areas. The natural beauty (4)_____ Vancouver is famous all around the world.

Vancouver is right next to the Rocky Mountains, so it is a wonderful place for skiing and snowboarding. Those aren't the only winter sports you can do there. If you can (5)_____ a winter sport, then you probably do that sport in Vancouver. After all, the 2010 Winter Olympics

were there. Vancouver is also great for hiking, jogging, and skateboarding. It even has beaches. The beaches aren't the (6)_____ in the world, but they are clean and pretty.

(7)_____ place that you have to visit in Vancouver is Stanley Park. This is a public park that is a stone's throw from (8)_____. However, the park is completely surrounded by the Pacific Ocean. The nature in Stanley Park is beautiful. It is close to downtown, but it feels like it is 100 kilometres away. The park also has playgrounds, gardens, beaches, tennis courts, and even an (9)_____.

Vancouver is something for everybody. It is no (10)_____ that people think it is one of the world's best cities.

- | | | | |
|----------------|------------|-------------|---------------|
| 1. A. number | B. exist | C. control | D. population |
| 2. A. area | B. border | C. region | D. place |
| 3. A. includes | B. insists | C. combines | D. consists |
| 4. A. around | B. over | C. on | D. upon |
| 5. A. repeat | B. tell | C. name | D. separate |
| 6. A. good | B. best | C. better | D. well |
| 7. A. Another | B. Others | C. Other | D. Anothers |
| 8. A. mountain | B. hill | C. village | D. downtown |
| 9. A. quarter | B. effort | C. aquarium | D. notice |
| 10. A. wonder | B. cause | C. true | D. fact |

III. Read the following passage and write T (True) or F (False) for each statement.

London is the biggest city in Britain. More than 7 million people live and work there. It is one of the most important cities in the world. It is a centre for business and for tourism. London consists of three parts: The City of London, the East End and the West End. In the City of London there are many banks, offices and Stocks Exchange. In the West End we can see many historical places, parks, shops and theatres. It is the world of rich people and money. The East End is the district where working people live and work. The Port of London is also there. You can have a very good time in this city. You can visit different cinemas, theatres and museums. The "Odeon" is one of the most famous cinemas of the country. The most famous museums are: The British Museum and the Tate Gallery. There are many shops in London. Oxford Street is London's main shopping centre. People from all over the world buy clothes, shoes, toys and souvenirs there. The street is more than a mile long. The best known departments are Selfridges and John Lewis. The largest park in London is Hyde Park with its Speaker's Comer. Sit on the green grass and try England's favourite food – fish and chips.

	True (T)	False (F)
1. There are lots of theatres, parks and historical places in the City of London.		
2. The Port of London is in the East End of London.		
3. Working people live and work in the West End of London.		
4. The "Odeon" is a famous museum in London.		
5. People go to Oxford Street to buy clothes and souvenirs.		
6. People from all over the world don't buy clothes, shoes, toys and souvenirs in London.		

1. The enormous 28-metre figure of Jesus gazing across/ East Sea with outstretched arms be located at the Southern end/ Small Mountain.
2. Built in 1971, this giant Jesus/ rest/ on a 10 metre-high platform.
3. The interior/ the statue/ is hollow/ contains a spiral staircase/129 steps, ascending/ from the foot/ of the statue/ to its neck.
4. The two shoulders of the figure/ be balconies, each able/ accommodate/ up to six people, which offer/ a splendid view/ the Surrounding landscape.
5. This is/ largest sculpture/ Southern Viet Nam. Recent construction a pathway/ have made the 30-minute hike up the mountain/ more pleasant/ the panoramic view along the way/ be magnificent.

This image shows a single sheet of white paper with horizontal blue or grey ruling lines. The lines are evenly spaced and run across the width of the page. There are approximately 20 lines visible. The paper has a slight shadow on its right side, suggesting it's resting on a surface.

1. A. insect	B. percent	C. wetland	D. extinct
2. A. agencies	B. medicine	C. species	D. circle
3. A. crisis	B. exist	C. primary	D. fertile
4. A. serious	B. thousand	C. found	D. around
5. A. chart	B. postcard	C. leopard	D. hardly
6. A. rival	B. title	C. silver	D. surprise
7. A. golden	B. compete	C. host	D. propose
8. A. clear	B. dear	C. wear	D. sear
9. A. wrestling	B. level	C. medal	D. result
10. A. ranked	B. gained	C. prepared	D. proved

II. Choose a word in each line that has different stress pattern.

1. A. periodic B. contagious C. electric D. suspicious
2. A. environmental B. conservatively C. approximately D. considerable
3. A. arrangement B. tourism C. opponent D. contractual
4. A. respectable B. affectionate C. kindergarten D. occasional
5. A. particular B. environment C. advertisement D. circumstances

III. Choose the correct answers A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.

1. Although he was under no _____, the shopkeeper replaced the defective battery free of charge.
A. urgency B. guarantee C. obligation D. insistence
2. Old Mr. Brown's condition looks very serious and it is doubtful if he will _____.
A. pull through B. pull up C. pull back D. pull out
3. To be a good short story writer one needs, among other things, a very _____ imagination.
A. vivid B. living C. bright D. sparkling
4. This ticket _____ you to a free meal in our new restaurant.
A. confers B. entitles C. grants D. credits
5. He was completely _____ by the thief's disguise.
A. taken away B. taken down C. taken in D. taken through
6. This book gives a brief _____ of the history of the castle and details of the art collection in the main hall.
A. outline B. reference C. article D. research
7. Mark is very set in his ways, but John has a more _____ attitude to life.
A. changeable B. flexible C. moveable D. fluid
8. I'm not serious investor, but I like to _____ in the stock market.
A. splash B. splatter C. paddle D. dabble
9. In all _____, there will never be a Third World War.
A. odds B. probability C. certainty D. possibilities
10. He had to retire from the match, suffering from a _____ ligament.
A. tom B. broken C. slipped D. sprained
11. You have to be rich to send a child to a private school because the fees are _____.
A. astrological B. aeronautical C. astronomical D. atmospherical
12. Archaeology is one of the most interesting scientific _____.
A. divisions B. disciplines C. matters D. compartments
13. It is doubtful whether the momentum of the peace movement can be _____.
A. sustained B. supplied C. supported D. subverted
14. Conversations you strike up with travelling acquaintances usually tend to be _____.
A. imperative B. perverse C. insufficient D. trivial
15. Charles Babbage's difference engine widely regarded as the _____ of the computer.
A. ancestor B. precursor C. antecedent D. premonition

IV. Read the text carefully, then decide whether the following statements are true (T) or false (F).

I live in a small village called Henfield. There are about 500 people here. The village is quiet and life here is slow and easy. You never have to queue in shops or banks. People never throw their rubbish in the streets, so the village is always clean. The air is also very clean because there's not much heavy traffic. It's much more friendly here than in a city. Everyone knows everyone and if someone has a problem, there are always people who can help. However, there are some things I don't like about Henfield. One thing is that there's not much to do in the evening. We haven't got any cinemas or theatres. Another problem is that people always talk about each other and everyone knows what everyone is doing. But I still prefer village life to life in a big city.

	True (T)	False (F)
1. The writer lives in a small village.		
2. The air is unpolluted because there is never traffic jam here.		
3. Villagers are very friendly and helpful.		
4. There is good nightlife in the village.		
5. There isn't much privacy in the village.		
6. The writer wishes to live in a big city.		

V. Fill in the bank with a suitable word.

People in Ho Chi Minh City are determined to (1)_____ into the world while maintaining the Vietnamese identity. Therefore, they have decided to use the image of the lotus bud, considered by many as Vietnam's (2)_____ flower, to be the (3)_____ inspiration for the architectural design. Ho Chi Minh City's Bitexco Financial Tower is completed as Viet Nam is on its way to recover from the global (4)_____ crisis. This coincides with a(n) (5)_____ demand from (6)_____ business circles for office space.

Any city you can (7)_____ of has its (8)_____ buildings. For example in Singapore, it is Marina Bay - an icon for (9) _____. In Ho Chi Minh City, it is a demand to (10)_____ something that everyone remembers and keeps them reminded of the city.

VI. Read the passage and choose each phrase to fill in the blanks.

- | | |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| A. where the Queen lives | D. where the Romans landed |
| B. which is the biggest | E. where you can buy anything |
| C. which are much bigger | F. where you can see |

London has a population of about 7,000,000. It lies on the River Thames, (1) _____ nearly 2,000 years ago. From about 1800 until World War Two, London was the biggest city in the world, but now there are many cities (2)_____.

London is famous for many things. Tourists come from all over the world to visit its historic buildings, such as Buckingham Palace, (3)_____, and the House of Parliament, (4) _____ and hear the famous clock, Big Ben. They also come to visit its theatres, its

museums, and its many shops, such as Harrods, (5)_____. And of course they want to ride on the big wheel next to the river.

Like many big cities, London has problems with traffic and pollution. Over 1,000,000 people a day use the London Underground, but there are still too many cars on the streets. The air isn't clean, but it is cleaner than it was 100 years ago.

For me, the best thing about London is the parks. There are five in the city centre. But my children's favorite place is Hamleys, (6)_____ toy shop in the world.

VII. Read the following passage and choose the best option for each numbered blank.

Hello! My name is Herman. I live in a big city in Germany and it's quite exciting! There are lots of things to do. My parents bought a flat near a park where I can ride my bike or (1)_____ skateboarding. My brother is older than me and I also go to the cinema with him. The city library is a great place. I usually meet my friends there and we do our school (2)_____ or study together.

Of course living in a big city is not easy. City life can be fast, tiring and stressful. The streets are always (3)_____ and noisy. Because of the cars is polluted sometimes. People are so busy that they (4)_____ have time for their neighbours or friends. But I can't see myself moving to the (5)_____. I just love living in the city too much.

- | | | | |
|------------------|----------------|----------------|-----------------|
| 1. A. go | B. do | C. play | D. sail |
| 2. A. workshop | B. projects | C. playgrounds | D. competitions |
| 3. A. bored | B. surprised | C. crowded | D. exhausted |
| 4. A. usually | B. always | C. often | D. rarely |
| 5. A. university | B. countryside | C. mountain | D. building |

VIII. Use the words given and other words to complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence.

- We have never stayed at a worse hotel than this.
This _____ we've ever stayed at.
- Please continue doing your work and don't let anything interrupt you.
Please _____ and don't let anything interrupt you.
- I think Da Nang is not so exciting as Ho Chi Minh City.
I think Ho Chi Minh City _____ Da Nang.
- Our city has five big shopping malls.
There _____ in our city.
- The Central Tower is the tallest building in this city.
No building in this city _____ the Central Tower.
- I'll consider it carefully and give you an answer next week.
I'll _____ and give you an answer next week.

Unit 3

TEN STRESS AND PRESSURE

PART 1: GRAMMAR REVIEW

INDIRECT SPEECH (REPORTED SPEECH) - LỜI NÓI GIÁN TIẾP.

1. Usage:

Trong lời nói trực tiếp, chúng ta ghi lại chính xác những từ, ngữ của người nói dùng. Lời nói trực tiếp thường được thể hiện bởi: các dấu ngoặc kép “.....” - tức là lời nói đó được đặt trong dấu ngoặc.

Ví dụ về lời nói trực tiếp:

He said, “I learn English”.

“I love you,” she said.

2. Cách chuyển câu trần thuật trong lời nói trực tiếp sang lời nói gián tiếp:

(Ôn lại Unit 11. Lớp 8- SGK Thí điểm của BGD và ĐT)

2.1 Đổi thì của câu:

Thì của các động từ trong lời nói gián tiếp thay đổi theo một nguyên tắc chung là lùi thì về quá khứ:

Thì trong Lời nói trực tiếp	Thì trong Lời nói gián tiếp
- Hiện tại đơn	- Quá khứ đơn
- Hiện tại tiếp diễn	- Quá khứ tiếp diễn
- Hiện tại hoàn thành	- Quá khứ hoàn thành
- Hiện tại hoàn thành tiếp diễn	- Quá khứ hoàn thành tiếp diễn
- Quá khứ đơn	- Quá khứ hoàn thành
- Quá khứ hoàn thành	- Quá khứ hoàn thành (không đổi)
- Tương lai đơn	- Tương lai trong quá khứ
- Tương lai tiếp diễn	- Tương lai tiếp diễn trong quá khứ
- Is/am/are going to do	- Was/were going to do
- Can/may/must do	- Could/might/had to do

Examples:

He does

He is doing

He has done

He has been doing

He did

He was doing

He did

He was doing

He had done

He had been doing

He had done

He had been doing

He had done	He had done
He will do	He would do
He will be doing	He would be doing
He will have done	He would have done
He may do	He might do
He may be doing	He might be doing
He can do	He could do
He can have done	He could have done
He must do/have to do	He had to do

2.2 Các thay đổi khác:

a. Thay đổi Đại từ

Các đại từ nhân xưng và đại sở hữu khi chuyển từ lời nói trực tiếp sang lời nói gián tiếp thay đổi như bảng sau:

ĐẠI TỪ	CHỨC NĂNG	TRỰC TIẾP	GIÁN TIẾP
Đại từ nhân xưng	Chủ ngữ	I we you	he, she they they
	Tân ngữ	me us you	him, her them them
Đại từ sở hữu	Phẩm định	my our your	his, her their their
	Định danh	mine ours yours	his, her theirs theirs

Ngoài quy tắc chung về các thay đổi ở đại từ được nêu trên đây, người học cần chú ý đến các thay đổi khác liên quan đến vị trí tương đối của người đóng vai trò thuật lại trong các ví dụ sau đây:

Ex: Jane, “Tom, you should listen to me.”

+ Jane tự thuật lại lời của mình:

I told Tom that he should listen to me.

+ Người khác thuật lại lời nói của Jane:

Jane told Tom that he should listen to her.

+ Người khác thuật lại cho Tom nghe:

Jane told you that he should listen to her.

+ Tom thuật lại lời nói của Jane:

Jane told me that I should listen to her.

b. Các thay đổi ở trạng từ không gian và thời gian:

Trực tiếp	Gián tiếp
This	=> That
That	=> That
These	=> Those
Here	=> There
Now	=> Then
Today	=> That day
Ago	=> Before
Tomorrow	=> The next day / the following day
The day after tomorrow	=> In two days' time / two days after
Yesterday	=> The day before / the previous day
The day before yesterday	=> Two days before
Next week	=> The following week
Last week	=> The previous week / the week before
Last year	=> The previous year / the year before

Examples:

Trực tiếp: “I saw the schoolboy *here* in this room *today*. ”

Gián tiếp: She said that she had seen the schoolboy *there* in *that* room *that day*.

Trực tiếp: “I will read *these* letters *now*. ”

Gián tiếp: She said that she would read *those* letters *then*.

Ngoài quy tắc chung trên đây, người học cần nhớ rằng *tình huống thật* và *thời gian khi hành động được thuật lại* đóng vai trò rất quan trọng trong khi chuyển từ lời nói trực tiếp sang lời nói gián tiếp.

3. Cách chuyển câu hỏi trong lời nói trực tiếp sang lời nói gián tiếp:**3.1. Đổi câu trực tiếp sang câu gián tiếp cần:**

- + Thì, đại từ, tính từ sở hữu, trạng từ chỉ thời gian và nơi chốn thay đổi như câu trần thuật.
- + Thể nghi vấn của động từ đổi thành thể xác định, nên trong câu hỏi gián tiếp không có dấu hỏi.

Ex: She said: “Where do they live?”

➔ She asked where they lived.

3.2. Nếu trong câu trực tiếp động từ là “say” thì câu gián tiếp phải dùng động từ để hỏi: ask; inquire; wonder; want to know...

Ex: Hoa said “Where is the post office?”

➔ Hoa asked where the post office was.

“Where is the airport?” she inquired.

➔ She inquired where the airport was.

3.3. Nếu câu hỏi (Yes/ No questions), to dùng “If” hoặc “Whether” trong câu gián tiếp.

Ex: “Are there any people in the room?” She said.

➔ She asked **if/ whether** any people were in the room.

“Do you want to drink beer or wine?” the waiter asked.

➔ The waiter asked whether I wanted to drink beer or wine.

PART 2: PRACTICE

A. PHONETICS AND PHONOLOGY

I. Choose a word in each line that has different stress pattern

- | | | | |
|-------------------|-----------------|----------------|----------------|
| 1. A. cognitive | B. adulthood | C. confident | D. encourage |
| 2. A. delighted | B. manage | C. convince | D. depress |
| 3. A. confident | B. abandon | C. depressed | D. important |
| 4. A. communicate | B. disappointed | C. preparation | D. adolescence |
| 5. A. pressure | B. decision | C. friendship | D. guidance |

II. Find the word which has a different sound in the underlined part.

- | | | | |
|----------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. A. <u>s</u> kill | B. house-keeping | C. t <u>e</u> nse | D. dec <u>i</u> sion |
| 2. A. adv <u>i</u> ce | B. dec <u>i</u> sion | C. del <u>i</u> ghted | D. hel <u>p</u> line |
| 3. A. st <u>u</u> dy | B. ad <u>u</u> lthood | C. col <u>u</u> mnnist | D. fr <u>u</u> strated |
| 4. A. conc <u>e</u> ntrate | B. s <u>e</u> lf-aware | C. str <u>e</u> ssed | D. t <u>e</u> nse |
| 5. A. <u>e</u> mbarrassed | B. de <u>p</u> ressed | C. h <u>e</u> lpline | D. <u>e</u> mpathise |
| 6. A. embarr <u>a</u> ss | B. m <u>i</u> ssing | C. class <u>m</u> ate | D. press <u>u</u> re |

B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

I. The word in brackets at the end of each of the following sentences can be used to form a word that fits suitably in the blank.

- They were brought up to behave in a _____ way in public. (CIVILIZATION)
- Many people limit their _____ to the sun because their skin burns very easily. (EXPOSE)
- Helen was worried about her test, and she didn't sleep well. She was very tired after a _____ night. (SLEEP)
- The price of the book is 10 dollar, including _____ and packing. (POST)
- How are you getting on with your _____ course in French. (CORRESPOND)
- It is _____ for beginning students to make mistakes in English. (AVOID)
- The _____ of the trains and buses causes frustration and annoyance. (FREQUENT)
- This issue is very _____. Don't discuss it outside the group. (CONFIDENCE)
- Do you know what the _____ of the river is? (DEEP)
- He was born blind, but despite this _____ he still managed to become one of the top pop singers of his generation. (ABLE)

II. Rewrite the following sentences using questions words + to-infinitives.

1. They don't know where they should put the sofa.

2. The rules didn't specify who I should speak to in case of an emergency.

3. Huyen My wondered how she could ride the scooter.

4. Let us decide when we should start the project.

5. Could you tell me where I can find a good hotel?

6. We must find out what we are to do next.

7. A good dictionary tells you how you should pronounce the words.

8. They are not sure who they will meet at the entrance.

9. She can't remember when she has to turn off the oven.

10. Does he know what he should look for?

III. Complete the sentences with the words from the box. Use each word once only.

disappointed	embarrassed	frustrated	tired	worried
angry	bored	confident	confused	delighted

1. I feel _____. I don't have anything to do.

2. Janet is _____ because she doesn't know if she got an F or an A in her test.

3. I feel so _____ because I've worked all night.

4. The headmaster was very _____ with Tom because of his bad behavior at school.

5. The students felt _____ because they couldn't go camping.

6. Bob looks depressed and _____. He's constantly signing and complaining.

7. Paul was _____ when he heard his song on the radio.

8. Mum is _____ because my sister hasn't come home yet.

9. Phuong is _____ that he will pass the examination.

10. Peter felt _____ when he was treated in front of some girls.

IV. Choose the correct answer among A, B C or D.

1. His neighbours sometimes wondered _____ he did for a living.

A. why

B. when

C. where

D. what

2. Could you please tell me _____?
 A. It is how far to the nearest bus stop B. how far is it to the nearest bus stop
 C. how far to the nearest bus stop is it D. how far it is to the nearest bus stop
3. Marigold wondered _____ Kevin and Ruth would be at the party.
 A. that B. whether C. if D. B & C
4. He asked me “_____?”
 A. How long you have studied English. B. How long had you studied English
 C. How long you had study English D. How long you had studied English
5. While many teachers spend some class time teaching _____ skills, students often need more social skills.
 A. study B. studied C. study’s D. studies
6. I am not sure _____ I can solve this problem.
 A. how B. what C. who D. by whom
7. She asked me _____ the seat _____ or not.
 A. if – had occupied C. whether – was occupied
 C. if – has been occupied D. whether – occupied
8. By the age of 15, teenagers are better able to _____ a more demanding curriculum.
 A. solve B. operate C. handle D. deal
9. My parents asked me to find out _____ it gave you so much trouble.
 A. what B. which C. why D. where
10. The policeman asked us _____.
 A. had any of us seen the accident happen
 B. if had any of us seen the accident happen
 C. whether any of us had seen the accident happen
 D. that if any of us had seen the accident happen
11. Tom told us that sometimes he had difficulty _____ his feelings.
 A. expressing B. communicating C. sending D. talking
12. My teacher told me that I _____ attend the math course for the higher level programme that I _____ for.
 A. can’t – apply B. couldn’t – apply
 C. can’t – applied D. couldn’t – had applied
13. I asked him _____ but he said nothing.
 A. what the matter was B. what was the matter
 C. the matter was what D. what’s the matter was
14. My closest friend is not very _____ and she likes having a small friend group but I like talking with a lot of people and hanging out.
 A. society B. sociable C. social D. socialist
15. Mi asked what information she _____ that assignment.
 A. needs to be done B. needed doing
 C. need to do D. needed to do

16. James _____ him up when the bus reached the square.
 A. told me wake B. asked me to wake
 C. said me to wake D. requested me waking
17. Ann was raised very _____ on her parents, and she was _____ that she wouldn't live on her own afterwards.
 A. dependent - worry B. dependent – worried
 C. independent - worry D. independent - worried
18. Susan needs someone to show her how to _____ her anxiety and depression.
 A. empathise B. try C. succeed D. manage
19. I wonder _____ we'll catch the bus _____ we'll take a taxi.
 A. if - and whether B. whether - or that
 C. if - or that D. whether - or whether
20. The advice columnist said, "It sounds like the problem is not your appearance but the _____ you see yourself."
 A. route B. distance C. way D. behavior

C. READING

I. Fill in the blank with a suitable word.

Dealing (1)_____ pressures and in middle school can (2)_____ difficult. The pressure may be to take friends, earn good (3)_____, excel in sports or other activities, and deal with hectic schedules.

More and more people are going to high school now and it is becoming tougher to get in. Middle-school students face (4)_____ to keep their grades up every day. They are in a (5)_____ with their peers to be the best and the brightest in everything.

During the teenage years, children will (6)_____ the pressure to grow up. No longer will they be able to act (7)_____ a child and not worry about responsibilities. Their (8)_____ should help them make this transition from a child to an adult easy and teach them to (9)_____ wise decisions. Prepare them for the world ahead of them and don't let go completely at (10)_____. Gradually let the growing up occur.

II. Read the text and use the words in the box to fill in the blanks.

about	can	avoid	have	ways
form	more	many	suffer	because

Teenagers today live in a very competitive world. It is (1)_____ important than ever to succeed at school if you hope to (2)_____ a chance in the job market afterwards. It's no wonder that many young people worry (3)_____ letting down their parents, their peers and themselves. To try to please everyone, they take on too (4)_____ tasks until it becomes harder and harder to balance homework assignments, parties, sports activities and friends. The result is that young people (5)_____ from stress.

There are different ways of dealing with stress. Everyone knows that caffeine, in the (6)_____ of coffee or soft drinks, keeps you awake and alert. But caffeine is a drug which (7)_____ become addictive. In the end, like other drugs, caffeine only leads to more stress. There are better (8)_____ to deal with stress: physical exercise is a good

release for stress, (9)_____ it increases certain chemicals in the brain which calm you down. You have to get enough sleep to (10)_____ stress and to stay healthy and full of energy.

III. Read the passage and choose the correct answer to each of the questions.

If parents bring up a child with the sole aim of turning the child into a genius, they will cause a disaster. According to several scientists, this is one of the biggest mistakes which ambitious parents make. Generally, the child will be only too aware of what his parents expect, and will fail. Unrealistic parental expectations can cause great damage to children.

However, if parents are not too unrealistic about what they expect their children to do, but are ambitious in a sensible way, the child may succeed in doing very well – especially if the parents are very supportive of their child.

Michael is very lucky. He is crazy about music, and his parents help him a lot by taking him to concerts and arranging private piano and violin lessons for him. They even drive him 50 kilometers twice a week for violin lessons. Michael's mother knows very little about music, but his father plays the trumpet in a large orchestra. However, he never makes Michael enter music competitions if he is unwilling.

Winston, Michael's friend, however, is not so lucky. Both his parents are successful musicians, and they set too high a standard for Winston. They want their son to be as successful as they are and so they enter him for every piano competition held. They are very unhappy when he does not win. Winston is always afraid that he will disappoint his parents and now he always seems quiet and unhappy.

1. Michael is fortunate in that _____.
 - A. his mother knows little about music
 - B. his parents help him in a sensible way
 - C. his father is a musician
 - D. his parents are quite rich
2. Winston's parents push their son so much and he _____.
 - A. has become a good musician
 - B. is afraid to disappoint them
 - C. has won a lot of piano competitions
 - D. cannot learn much music from them
3. One of the serious mistakes parents can make is to _____.
 - A. make their child become a musician
 - B. neglect their child's education
 - C. push their child into trying too much
 - D. help their child to become a genius
4. The two examples given in the passage illustrate the principle that _____.
 - A. parents should let the child develop in the way he wants
 - B. parents should spend more money on the child's education
 - C. successful parents always have intelligent children
 - D. successful parents often have unsuccessful children

5. Parents' ambition for their children is not wrong if they _____.
 A. understand and help their children sensibly
 B. arrange private lessons for their children
 C. force their children into achieving success
 D. themselves have been very successful

D. WRITING

I. Turn the following statements into reported speech.

1. "Don't repeat this mistake!" the instructor warned the sportsman.

→ _____

2. "Leave your address with the secretary" the assistant said to me.

→ _____

3. "Phone me for an answer tomorrow" the manager said to the client.

→ _____

4. "Don't be so silly" Mr. John said to his wife.

→ _____

5. Tom said to the girl "When did you have this picture taken?"

→ _____

6. "Shall we go somewhere for a cup of coffee after class?" Tom said.

→ _____

7. John said to Marry "Why don't you wear your hair a little longer?"

→ _____

8. Ann asked her brother "What are you planning to do tomorrow?"

→ _____

9. She asked her boyfriend "Is it true that your father fought in the last war?"

→ _____

10. He said "I don't understand why she has refused to join us on the trip"

→ _____

II. Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given in bold. Do not change the word given.

1. Charles and his father are exactly alike in appearance. **looks**

=> Charles _____ his father.

2. Take all your possessions and walk slowly to the exit. **belongs**

=> Take everything _____ and walk slowly to the exit.

3. I'm finding it really enjoyable to work here. **enjoying**

=> I _____ here.

4. I take work home regularly because of my new responsibility at work. **means**

=> My new responsibility at work _____ work home regularly.

5. In my cycling group there's George, Tom, Harry and me. **consists**

=> My _____ George, Tom, Harry and me.

6. In your opinion, who's going to win the Cup? **think**
 => Who do _____ win the Cup?
7. I'm seeing how wide the door is. **measuring**
 => I _____ the door.
8. Neil always forgets his wife's birthday. **remember**
 => Neil _____ his wife's birthday.
9. Its ability to catch fish is the key to the polar bear's survival. **depends**
 => The polar bear's _____ to catch fish.
10. What's on your mind at the moment? **thinking**
 => What _____ at the moment?

PART 3: TEST YOURSELF

I. The word in brackets at the end of each of the following sentences can be used to form a word that fits suitably in the blank.

- We had the phone _____ because we are moving tomorrow. (**CONNECT**)
- When did the toys come into _____? (**EXIT**)
- He will be able to receive an _____ from a government agency. (**ALLOW**)
- Are there any _____ rivers left in the world? (**POLLUTE**)
- The newly-built cinema shows a _____ of films. (**VARY**)
- Do parents get _____ from their children studies? (**SATISFY**)
- He is very _____ in everything he does. (**SYSTEM**)
- Fruit _____ as it ripens. (**SWEET**)
- My brother lives in a _____ area. (**RESIDE**)
- She is extremely _____ about art. (**KNOWLEDGE**)

II. Choose the correct answer A, B, C, or D.

- The passenger asked _____ we landed.
 A. what B. when C. if D. why
- He asked me what _____.
 A. time was it B. time is it C. time it was D. none is correct.
- He told me to rest for a while.
 “_____ for a while”, he said.
 A. To rest B. Rest C. Do you rest D. Resting
- He asked “Why did she take my pen?”
 - He asked why _____.
 A. she took his pen B. did she take his pen
 C. she had taken his pen D. she has taken his pen
- Taking good notes _____ students to evaluate, organize and summarize information.
 A. requests B. requires C. allows D. offers

6. Excuse me. Could you tell me _____?
A. what time is it B. what is the time C. what time it is D. it is what time
7. I suffer from depression and anxiety, but I don't know _____ to get over my problems.
A. what B. how C. where D. which
8. As children move toward _____, they are less likely to ask for advice.
A. dependent B. dependence C. independent D. independence
9. We wonder _____ from his office after that scandal
A. why did he not resign B. why he did not resign
C. why he not resign D. why didn't he resign
10. Miss Hoa said that unsuccessful test takers didn't know _____ the questions came from.
A. when B. where C. what D. why
11. A great way to improve _____ skills is to keep trying new things.
A. reason B. reasoned C. reasoning D. reasons'
12. Jeff wanted to know _____.
A. that why were his friends laughing B. why were his friends laughing
C. why his friends were laughing D. the reason why his friends laughing
13. I want to talk to my teacher about my problems, but I have no idea _____ to start, or _____ to talk to him.
A. what – where B. where – who C. why – whom D. where – how
14. Perhaps what you're reading or hearing is boring, which makes it hard to _____ on the book or the conversation.
A. concentrate B. rely C. depend D. notice
15. Mr Hawk told me that he would give me his answer the _____ day.
A. previous B. following C. before D. last
16. Mr. Tan told us that the kids who _____ in tests often _____ the others were lucky.
A. succeed – thought B. succeed – had thought
C. didn't succeed – were thinking D. didn't succeed – thought
17. Pressure _____ children to get into top schools has reached a crisis point.
A. at B. under C. on D. with
18. She _____ him whether he liked the steak she cooked.
A. asks B. wondered C. wanted to know D. asked
19. "What does she like?" he asked me.
A. He asked me what she likes B. He asked me what she liked.
C. He asked me what do I like. D. He asked me what did he like.
20. She said, "Don't tease me, John."
A. She said not to tease me to John. B. She said John not to tease me.
C. She told John not to tease her. D. She told John do not tease her.

III. Fill each blank with a suitable word to complete the following passage.

You can do a few things to make homework less (1)_____. First, be sure you understand the assignment. Write it (2)_____ in your notebook or day planner if you need to, and don't be afraid to ask questions about what is expected. It is much easier to take a minute to ask the teacher during or after class than to (3)_____ to remember later that night! If you want, you can also ask how long the particular homework assignment should take to complete so you can plan your time.

Second, use any extra time you have at school to work on your homework. Many schools have libraries that are (4)_____ designed to allow students to study or get homework done. The more work you can get done in school, the (5)_____ you will have to do at that night.

Third, pace yourself. If you don't finish your homework (6)_____ school, think about how much you have left and what else is going on that day, and then plan your time. Most (7)_____ students have between 1 and 3 hours of homework a night. If it is a heavy homework day, you will need to devote more time to homework.

No one is (8)_____ to understand everything, and maybe you need some help. The first place to turn for help is your teacher. But what if you don't feel comfortable with your teacher? If you are in a big enough school, there may be other teachers who teach the same subject. Speak to other teachers directly and you may be in luck. Sometimes it just helps to have someone (9)_____ something in a different way. (10)_____, you might also be able to get some help from another student. If there is someone you like who is a good student, think about asking that person if you can study together.

- | | | | |
|------------------|-----------------|--------------|--------------|
| 1. A. stressful | B. purpose | C. advantage | D. control |
| 2. A. up | B. into | C. off | D. down |
| 3. A. fight | B. discuss | C. struggle | D. add |
| 4. A. specify | B. specifically | C. special | D. specifies |
| 5. A. more | B. less | C. little | D. better |
| 6. A. during | B. since | C. in | D. on |
| 7. A. between | B. high-school | C. among | D. over |
| 8. A. stopped | B. leaved | C. expected | D. marked |
| 9. A. do | B. make | C. ask | D. explain |
| 10. A. Meanwhile | B. Therefore | C. Although | D. Moreover |

IV. Fill each blank with a suitable word in the box.

rude	hard	another	check	or
because	use	on	posting	to do

Cyberbullying is the (1)_____ of technology to annoy, threaten, embarrass or target (2)_____ person. Online threats and aggressive, _____ or rude texts, posts, or messages all count. So does (3)_____ personal information, pictures, or videos designed to hurt or embarrass someone else. (4)_____ comments often focus on things like a person's gender, religion race, or physical differences.

Online bullying can be particularly damaging and upsetting (5)_____ it is usually anonymous or (6)_____ to find. People can suffer (7)_____ a 24/7 basis – every time they (8)_____ their cellphone or computer.

The first thing (9)_____ to solve the problem is to tell an adult you trust. You also can talk to your school counselor or a trusted teacher or family member. Ignoring bullies is the best way to take away their power, but it isn't always easy to do – in the real world (10)_____ online.

V. Read the following passage and then answer the questions below it.

School

British teenagers spend most of their time at school. Students in Britain can leave school at sixteen (grade 11). This is also the age when most students take their first important exams, the GCSE (General Certificate of Secondary Education). Most teens take between 5-10 subjects, which means a lot of studying. They are spending more time on homework than teenagers ever before. Forget watching TV, teenagers in Britain now spend 2-3 hours on homework after school.

School uniform

Visit almost any school in Britain and the first thing you'll notice is the school uniform. Although school uniform has its advantages, when they are 15 or 16, most teenagers are tired of wearing it. When there is more than one school in a town, school uniforms can **highlight** differences between schools. In London there are many cases of bullying and fighting between pupils from different schools.

Clothes and looks

In Britain, some teens judge you by the shirt or trainers you are wearing. 40% of British teenagers believe it's important to wear designer labels. If you want to follow the crowd, you need to wear trendy labels. Teenage feet in Britain wear fashionable trainers and the more expensive, the better.

1. What do most teenagers in Britain prefer to wear?

A. expensive uniforms	C. economical trainers
B. trendy labels	D. fashionable hats
2. The word '**highlight**' in paragraph 2 is closest in meaning to _____.

A. emphasize	B. decrease	C. confuse	D. remark
--------------	-------------	------------	-----------
3. Most students in Britain take the GCSE when _____.

A. they are 16 years old	C. they begin grade 12
B. they are 11 years old	D. they finish grade 10
4. According to the passage, which of the following statements is NOT true?

A. Most 16-year-old students in Britain don't like school uniform.	B. Students in Britain can take 8 subjects at the GCSE.
C. Most British teenagers spend 2-3 hours watching TV after school.	D. Many British teenagers judge their friends by their shirts or trainers.
5. What is the first thing you'll notice when you visit almost any school in Britain?

A. the school gate	C. the school uniform
B. the school logo	D. the school playground

VI. Choose the word or phrase in each of the following sentences that needs correcting.

1. Her mother ordered her do not go out with him the night before.
A B C D
2. The traffic warden asked me why had I parked my car there.
A B C D
3. He said that he will pick me up at 8 am the following day.
A B C D
4. She said that the books in the library would be available tomorrow.
A B C D
5. He advised her thinking about that example again because it needed correcting.
A B C D
6. The receptionist said I must fill out that form before I attended the interview.
A B C D
7. Marty said a good friendship is like a diamond – a valuable, beautiful and durable.
A B C D
8. The mayor apologized on having slept in an international summit and resigned afterwards.
A B C D

VII. Change the following sentences into reported speech

1. "I'll take you to the zoo tomorrow" my mother said to me.
→ _____
2. Jane said to Bill "When do you expect to finish your assignment?"
→ _____
3. The man said to the boy "Can you show me the way to the bank?"
→ _____
4. "Don't be so silly" Mr. John said to his wife.
→ _____
5. "Give a smile" the photographer said to me.
→ _____
6. "Please, help me to make a decision" Ann asked her friend.
→ _____
7. "Be a good girl and sit quietly for five minutes" the nurse said to the child.
→ _____
8. My sister said to me "Are you crazy?".
→ _____
9. She asked me "Have you ever seen a flying saucer?".
→ _____
10. James said "Do you want me to send this letter for you".
→ _____

Unit
4

LIFE IN THE PAST

PART 1: GRAMMAR REVIEW

1. USED TO DO SOMETHING:

Chỉ một thói quen, một hành động thường xuyên xảy ra trong quá khứ và bây giờ không còn nữa.

Form:

- (+) S + **used to** + V
 (-) S + **didn't use to** + V
 (?) **Did (not)** + S + **use to** + V?

Ex: (+) I used to smoke a packet a day but I stopped two years ago.

(-) She didn't use to drink milk when she was young.

(?) Did he use to live here?

LƯU Ý:

• Phân biệt giữa USED TO, BE/GET USED TO, BE USED FOR

* **Used to do something:** Đã từng làm việc gì trong quá khứ mà nay không làm nữa. Đây là mẫu câu chỉ sử dụng ở thời quá khứ.

Ex: I used to get up early in the morning when I was a student (But I don't get up early now).

* **Be/ get used to N/ doing something:** (trở nên/dần) quen với. Mẫu câu này có thể sử dụng ở thời quá khứ, hiện tại hoặc tương lai. Trong cấu trúc này, “used” là 1 tính từ và “to” là 1 giới từ.

Form:

S + be/get used to + V-ing = S + be/get accustomed to + V-ing

Ex: - I am used to getting up early in the morning.

- He didn't complain about the noise next door. He was used to it.

- I am not used to the new system in the factory yet.

* **Hình thức bị động của “used to” được dùng trong câu bị động, mang nghĩa để làm gì:**

S + be used to + V = S + be used for + V-ing

Ex: Money is used to buy and sell goods.

Or: Money is used for buying and selling goods.

2. WISH DÙNG TRONG HIỆN TẠI: Để diễn đạt một ước muốn không thể thực hiện được trong hiện tại.

Form:

S + wish(es) + S + thì quá khứ đơn

- Ex: - I wish I knew the answer to this question. (At present I don't know the answer).
 - She wishes she didn't have so much work to do. (She has a lot of work to do).

PART 2: PRACTICE

A. PHONETICS AND PHONOLOGY

I. Choose a word in each line that has different stress pattern.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|----------------|------------------|----------------|
| 1. A. damage | B. event | C. behave | D. surprise |
| 2. A. develop | B. understand | C. imagine | D. consider |
| 3. A. illiterate | B. communicate | C. entertainment | D. traditional |
| 4. A. programme | B. custom | C. postman | D. personality |
| 5. A. grandparent | B. violence | C. buffalo | D. importance |

II. Find the word which has a different sound in the underlined part.

- | | | | |
|---------------|------------|--------------|-----------|
| 1. A. shifts | B. thinks | C. joins | D. soups |
| 2. A. busy | B. basic | C. person | D. answer |
| 3. A. bags | B. graphs | C. lands | D. days |
| 4. A. rules | B. shares | C. arrives | D. dates |
| 5. A. coach | B. chore | C. chorus | D. check |
| 6. A. clap | B. catch | C. waving | D. handle |
| 7. A. maximum | B. jump | C. summarize | D. abrupt |
| 8. A. kidding | B. signal | C. whistle | D. slight |
| 9. A. cue | B. cite | C. course | D. cable |
| 10. A. reason | B. realize | C. lead | D. speak |

B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

I. Choose the word or phrase (a, b, c or d) that fits the blank space in each sentence.

- Last night I came home, cooked dinner, and _____ TV.
 A. watch B. watched C. was watching D. would watch
- I rarely eat ice cream now but I _____ it when I was a child.
 A. eat B. used to eat C. would eat D. didn't use to eat
- I wish I _____ you some money for your rent, but I'm broke myself.
 A. can lend B. would lend C. could lend D. will lend
- Would you like _____ and visit me next summer?
 A. come B. coming C. to come D. came
- Rick left class early because he _____ a headache.
 A. had B. used to have C. was having D. has
- Sara didn't hear the phone. She _____.
 A. sleeps B. slept C. used to sleep D. was sleeping

7. The Marconi family _____ to the United States thirty years ago.
A. comes B. came C. has come D. was coming
8. I've been feeling better since _____.
A. the doctor has come B. the doctor comes
C. the doctor coming D. the doctor came
9. The country now known as Myanmar _____ Burma.
A. used to be called B. be called
C. called D. has called
10. "Monica is such a nice person." "Yes. I wish I _____ her more often."
A. see B. will see C. saw D. have seen

II. Complete each of the following sentences with "used to/ didn't use to" using the verbs from the box.

travel	walk	watch	write	swim
buy	climb	play	shop	be

1. In my childhood, there _____ so many high building here. There were parks.
2. People _____ with pen, but now they use computers.
3. My brother _____ football, but an injure stopped him from playing.
4. In my grandfather's youth, people _____ by car. They rode horses.
5. I _____ to school, but two weeks ago I got a bike so now I ride it every day.
6. My sister _____ when we go to the beach because she was afraid of water.
7. Mr. Lam _____ television in the morning. He did it in the evening.
8. David was a good climber in his youth. He _____ very high mountains.
9. My parents _____ me expensive toys as we were not rich.
10. We _____ in the town market. We bought fish, fruit and vegetables.

III.Fill in each blank in the passage with the correct word from the box. There are some extra words.

houses	variety	popular	characteristics
historical	home	unique	history

Ha Noi's Old Quarter was established hundreds of years ago on the east side of the ancient Thang Long citadel. In the old days, the Old Quarter, a system of narrow streets, alleys and houses, was (1)_____ to several guilds such as bronze casting, forging, jewelry making, wood carving, silk and clothes trading. Small, beautifully styled houses built along with a (2)_____ local culture. Streets in the Old Quarter still have names describing their original goods or craft, for example, Hang Bac or "Silver Street". The ground-floor shops of the (3)_____ here now sell handicrafts, fine arts, and food. But the quarter also has a number of pagodas, temples, (4)_____ relics, and festivals dedicated to the founders of some the local crafts. Now, many guild streets, like Hang Quat street, don't make fans anymore, but they are remembered as craft streets The architecture and lifestyle of the local people reflect typical (5)_____ of traditional guild streets in Ha Noi.

IV. Put in the present perfect or past simple of the verbs in brackets.

1. Martin _____(be) to Greek five times. He loves the place.
2. I _____(work) for a computer company for a year. That was after college.
3. We _____(move) here in 1993. We _____(be) here a long time now.
4. It isn't a very good party. Most people _____(already/ go) home.
5. It was so hot today that I _____(wear) shorts and a T-shirt at work.
6. My wife and I _____(move) three times since we _____(get) married.
7. So far this week there _____(be) three burglaries in our street.
8. When I was younger I _____(play) badminton for my local team.
9. In the past few years, it _____(become) more and more difficult to get into university.
10. I _____(enjoy) skiing ever since I _____(live) in Switzerland.
11. I _____(have) these shoes since my eighteen birthday.
12. We _____(live) in Newcastle for three years now and like it a lot.
13. The last time I _____(go) to Brighton was in August.
14. When my parents were on holiday, I _____(stay) with my grandparents for two weeks.
15. I _____(not see) Rachel for ages. She _____(not visit) us since July.

C. READING

I. Read the passage and fill in the blanks with the suitable words.

THE BEATLES

In the 1960s, The Beatles were probably the (1)_____ famous pop group in the whole world. Since then, there have (2)_____ a great many groups that have achieved enormous fame, so it is perhaps difficult now to imagine how sensational The Beatles were at the time. They were four boys from the north of (3)_____ and none of them had any training in music. They started by performing and recording songs (4)_____ black Americans and they had some success with these songs, then they (5)_____ writing their own songs and that was when they became really popular. The Beatles changed pop music. They were the first (6)_____ group to achieve great success from songs they had written themselves. After that it became common for groups and singers to write their own (7)_____. The Beatles did not have a long career. Their first hit record was in 1963 and they split up (8)_____ 1970. They stopped doing live performances in 1966 because it had become too dangerous for them their fans were so excited (9)_____ they surrounded them and tried to take their clothes as souvenirs! However, today some of their songs remain as (10)_____ as they were when they first came out. Throughout the world, many people can sing part of a Beatles song if you ask them.

II. Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

Either boys or girls, usually aged from seven to ten, play the two-person game of “Mandarin’s Box”. They draw a rectangle on the ground and (1)_____ it into ten small squares called “rice fields” or “fish ponds”.

They also draw two additional semi-circular boxes at the two (2)_____ of the rectangle, which are called “mandarin’s boxes” – the game’s name, each person has 25 small pebbles and a bigger stone.

Each player places the stone in one of the mandarin’s boxes and five small pebbles in each of the other squares. Then the game begins. The first player takes up the contents of one square on his or her side of the board, but not a mandarin’s box and distributes the pebbles one by one, (3)_____ with the text square in (4)_____ direction. Since each square contains five pebbles at the beginning, the first move will distribute five pebbles to the left or right.

After the last pebble is distributed, the player takes the contents of the following square and repeats the distribution (5)_____. But if the following square is one of the mandarin’s boxes, the turn ends and passes to the other player.

If the last pebble falls into a square that precedes one empty square, the player wins all the contents of the square following the empty square and (6)_____ these pebbles from the board. However, if there are two or more empty squares in a row, the player (7)_____ his or her turn.

Once a player has taken pebbles from the board, the turn is (8)_____ to the other player. If all five squares on one player’s side of the board are emptied at any time, that player must place one pebble he or she has aside back in each of the five squares so that the game can resume.

The game (9)_____ until the two mandarin’s boxes both been (10)_____. At the end of the game, the player with more pebbles wins, with each of the large stones counting as ten points.

- | | | | |
|--------------|---------------|-----------------|-------------------|
| 1. A. divide | B. share | C. separate | D. leave |
| 2. A. aims | B. ends | C. small points | D. stops |
| 3. A. start | B. starting | C. start | D. having started |
| 4. A. no | B. all | C. either | D. both |
| 5. A. action | B. method | C. change | D. process |
| 6. A. ends | B. disappears | C. leaves | D. removes |
| 7. A. loses | B. succeeds | C. fails | D. wins |
| 8. A. gone | B. made | C. handed | D. rewarded |
| 9. A. starts | B. pauses | C. stops | D. continues |
| 10. A. held | B. taken | C. moved | D. accepted |

III. Read the reading passage and choose the correct answer.

Cardamom is not as widely used as a spice in the United States as it is in other parts of the world. This fruit of the ringer plant provides oil that basically has been used **solely** as a stimulant in American and English medicines. Other cultures organized the **multipurpose** benefits of this aromatic fruit. In Asia it is used to **season** sauces such as **curry**, in Middle Eastern countries it is **steeped** to prepare a flavorful golden-colored tea; in parts of Northern Europe it is used as a spice in various types of pastry.

- The word “**solely**” in the passage could best be placed by _____.
A. initially B. only C. reportedly D. healthfully
- The word “**multipurpose**” in the passage is closest in meaning to _____.
A. health B. singular C. recognized D. varied
- Which of the following is closest in meaning to the word “**season**” in line 5 _____.
A. divided B. forecast C. spice D. put a time limit

4. “**curry**” in the passage is _____.
 A. the fruit of the ringer plant B. a spicy type of sauce
 C. a culture in the area of the Middle East D. a type of golden-colored tea
5. The word “**steeped**” in the passage is closest in meaning to _____.
 A. soaked B. dried C. stored D. grown

D. WRITING

I. Look at the information about *Jane* below. Make sentences with *used to* and *didn't use to*.

Five years ago	Today
I'm a hotel receptionist.	I work in a bookshop.
I've got a lot of friends.	I don't know many people.
I never read newspapers.	I read newspapers every day.
I travel a lot.	I don't go away much.
I play volleyball.	I play badminton.
I don't love cooking.	I like to cook Chinese dishes.
I wear make-up.	I wear no make-up at all.
I don't drink tea.	Tea's great! I like it.

Jane used to be a hotel receptionist, but now she works in a bookshop.

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____

II. Write sentences beginning *I wish...*

1. I don't know many people in the town.
I wish I knew many people in the town.
2. It would be nice to be able to fly a plane.

3. It's a shame I don't have a key.

4. Ann isn't here and I need to see her.

5. I don't like being so short.

6. Unfortunately, I have to work tomorrow.

7. Don't shout all the time. It's so annoying.

8. I'm sorry I can't go to the party.

9. I'd like to get access to the Internet, but I don't have a computer.

10. It's a pity the weather isn't better today.

III. Write the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first. Use the word in brackets.

1. No one told me about the change of the plan. (**know**)

2. When I was a child, we lived in Bristol. (**used**)

3. My friend was the winner of the competition. (**won**)

4. Is it a fact that the Romans built this wall? (**did**)

5. She's sorry she can't play the piano. (**wishes**)

6. Our trip to Africa was in October. (**We**)

7. It was breakfast-time when Susan rang. (**I**)

8. There were lights on the spacecraft. (**had**)

9. I had my old coat on. (**wearing**)

10. It isn't true that I made a mistake. (**didn't**)

PART 3: TEST YOURSELF

I. Choose the word that has the underlined part pronounced differently the others by circling the corresponding letter A, B, C or D.

1. A. path

B. tooth

C. theme

D. Thames

2. A. sound

B. amount

C. country

D. noun

- | | | | |
|-----------------------|---------------------|----------------------|--------------------|
| 3. A. <u>climbing</u> | B. <u>basket</u> | C. <u>subway</u> | D. <u>club</u> |
| 4. A. <u>problem</u> | B. <u>popular</u> | C. <u>convenient</u> | D. <u>rod</u> |
| 5. A. <u>rose</u> | B. <u>house</u> | C. <u>sound</u> | D. <u>cloud</u> |
| 6. A. <u>notebook</u> | B. <u>hoping</u> | C. <u>cock</u> | D. <u>potato</u> |
| 7. A. <u>dam</u> | B. <u>planning</u> | C. <u>plane</u> | D. <u>candle</u> |
| 8. A. <u>theory</u> | B. <u>therefore</u> | C. <u>neither</u> | D. <u>weather</u> |
| 9. A. <u>shoot</u> | B. <u>mood</u> | C. <u>poor</u> | D. <u>smooth</u> |
| 10. A. <u>dosage</u> | B. <u>massage</u> | C. <u>voyage</u> | D. <u>carriage</u> |

II. Choose a word in each line that has different stress pattern.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|
| 1. A. concentrate | B. report | C. indicator | D. craftsman |
| 2. A. sculpture | B. failure | C. closure | D. cooperate |
| 3. A. wander | B. embroider | C. embarrass | D. preserve |
| 4. A. pasture | B. artisan | C. lacquer | D. surface |
| 5. A. thereby | B. emotion | C. authentic | D. theory |

III. Fill in each gap in the passage with ONE suitable word.

wins	will	period	exchange	as
heads	another	middle/ center	after	raise

CAT AND MOUSE GAME

Each game requires between seven and ten people. They stand in a circle, hold hands and (1) _____ their hands above their (2) _____. Then they start singing the song. One person is chosen as the cat and (3) _____ as the mouse.

These two stand in the (4) _____ of the circle and lean against each other. When the others sing the last sentence of the song, the mouse starts to run, and the cat must run (5) _____ it. However, the cat must run in exactly the same route and manner (6) _____ the mouse. The cat (7) _____ the game when it catches the mouse. Then, the two exchange the roles. If the cat runs into the wrong hole, it (8) _____ be dismissed from that round. If it fails to catch the mouse in a certain (9) _____ of time (usually from three to five minutes for kindergarten-age children), it will (10) _____ its role with the mouse. The game will then continue.

IV. Write one word in each gap to complete the sentences.

- You can't blame me _____ the bad weather!
- You shouldn't criticize people _____ the way that they look.
- I'm thinking of inviting Eliot _____ the barbecue.
- You're not angry _____ what I said, are you?
- The head teacher is going to punish us _____ being late for class.
- Jonald Jennings, you have been found guilty _____ murder.
- I'll never forgive you _____ what you have done!

V. Complete the sentences by changing the form of the word in capitals when this is necessary.

CHARLIE CHAPLIN

During the First World War, at a time when there was lots of (1)_____ **HATE**
 in the world, one man did more than anyone else to spread (2)_____. **HAPPY**
 That man was the (3)_____, Charlie Chaplin. Audiences around **COMEDY**
 the world watched his films and each new one caused a lot of (4)_____. **EXCITED**
 Chaplin created the character of the little tramp and people (5)_____ **SYMPATHY**
 with this poor man. Up until then, film comedies had been (6)_____ **NOISE**
 and very fast. Although they were fun and (7)_____, the audiences **ENERGY**
 became (8)_____ with seeing the same situations. Chaplin produced **BORE**
 a different kind of comedy. It was slower and more (9)_____. His **EMOTION**
 films both made people laugh and touched their (10)_____. Even **FEEL**
 today, his films are enjoyed by many people of all ages.

VI. Choose the best option A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.

- I wish I _____ people with the same interests.
 A. meet B. can meet C. could meet D. will meet
- My mother says she used to _____ a diary when she was young.
 A. keep B. use C. write D. preserve
- The _____ between generations seems to be bigger and bigger than ever.
 A. blank B. space C. gap D. distance
- Our teacher's _____ is that we set up a project on preservation of our traditional games.
 A. offer B. suggestion C. scheme D. order
- I found the letter in my bag. – I _____ to post it.
 A. forgot B. would forget C. was forgetting D. had forgotten
- Does he tell you how he is getting _____ his new colleagues?
 A. on with B. on of C. away with D. out of
- Unfortunately the new system didn't _____ our expectations.
 A. catch up with B. bring about C. come across D. come up to
- The doctors say it'll take him a long time to get _____ the shock.
 A. past B. above C. through D. over
- I wish you _____ stop interrupting me whenever I speak.
 A. will B. would C. could D. might
- The policeman is happy _____ the kids safe and sound now.
 A. finding B. be found C. to find D. have found

VII. Choose the underlined word or phrase (A, B, C or D) that needs correcting.

- Lynn wishes she had a bigger apartment and can buy a car.
 A B C D
- As soon as the alarm clock rang, she woke up and was getting out of bed.
 A B C D

3. I haven't heard from the Maria since a long time.
A B C D
4. What do you use to do when you felt afraid?
A B C D
5. Mary was drying the dishes when she was dropping the plates.
A B C D
6. When I introduced Tom to Bob, they were shaking hands.
A B C D
7. When she looked out of the window, she saw some boys and girls play in the yard.
A B C D
8. He let the letter failing onto the floor.
A B C D

VIII. Put the verb into the correct form to complete the sentences.

1. I'm not tall enough to play volleyball. I wish _____ tall and strong. (**I/ be**)
2. I'm fed up with this rain. I wish _____ raining. (**it/ stop**)
3. My grandparents don't like living in the city. They wish _____ in the countryside. (**they/ live**)
4. It's a difficult question. I wish _____ the answer. (**I/know**)
5. I wish _____ here. She'd be able to help us. (**Ann/ be**)
6. Aren't they ready yet? I wish _____. (**they/ hurry up**)
7. It would be nice to stay here. I wish _____ go now. (**we/ not have to**)
8. It's freezing today. I wish _____ so cold. I hate cold weather. (**it/ not be**)
9. What's her name again? I wish _____ remember her name. (**I/ can**)
10. You're driving too fast. I wish _____ a bit. (**you/ slow down**)
11. What I said was stupid. I wish _____ anything. (**I/ not say**)
12. I should have listened to you. I wish _____ your advice. (**I/ take**)
13. I'm really sleepy today. I wish _____ take Bob to the airport last night. (**I/ not have to**)
14. It was a terrible film. I wish _____ to see it. (**we/ not go**)
15. It was so hot that I wish _____ to the beach. (**I/ go**)

IX. Read the following passage and fill in the blanks with the suitable words. Use the words in the box.

when	where	was	begin	sheep
which	activities	despite	effective	housework

My grandmother is more than ninety years old (1)_____ makes her the oldest person in the whole family. (2)_____ her old age, her memory is still fresh. She always tells us that many things used to be different (3)_____ she was young.

My grandma used to (4)_____ her day very early. She used to start her day at 4 o'clock while everybody else was still in beds. She used to do all the (5)_____ by

herself. She used to make clothes for her children and as for her outdoor work, she used to raise some chicken and (6)_____ and she also used to help the males to grow vegetables.

There didn't use to be many pastime (7)_____. Her hobby used to be listening to the radio. In the evening all the family used to sit by the fire in the sitting room (8)_____ all the family gathered at night to tell tales or discuss family matters as wedding, harvest time or to assign the next day's work.

When a member of the family (9)_____ ill, she used to show him which herbs to use. She collected them from the near forest or from the mountain. My grandma used to know so many (10)_____ methods to cure illnesses.

X. Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

It is just simple and ordinary as its (1)_____. No noisy sound from engines, no obscure smoke and no spending too much for commuting. From a long time ago, Vietnamese people have thought of the rickshaw as a (2)_____ means of transportation when going out. It is not only close-knit to Vietnamese but also connected strongly with the foreigners (3)_____ all of them were attracted by this unique means at the first time visiting Viet Nam.

The rickshaw has existed for a long time in Vietnamese life, and become quite necessary as the (4)_____ in a body. Not only the Vietnamese feel (5)_____ to rickshaw, foreigners are also impressed by this unique vehicle. They will be fond of sitting on the rickshaw for a (6)_____ tour around Sword Lake or a round on the streets to (7)_____ dreamy and peaceful photos in the ancient citadel.

Traveling in a rickshaw is the time for peacefully (8)_____ windy sunset and bright sunrises on the beach of Nha Trang or Da Nang or elsewhere. How pleasant it is for you to enjoy a relaxing feeling on the short (9)_____ trip.

Viet Nam is becoming more and more modern; however, rickshaw still (10)_____ through the time and has a stand in the minds of the residents.

- | | | | |
|----------------|---------------|----------------|-------------------|
| 1. A. presence | B. appearance | C. judgment | D. performance |
| 2. A. shared | B. recognized | C. friendly | D. familiar |
| 3. A. although | B. as | C. but | D. while |
| 4. A. breath | B. air | C. rest | D. recovery |
| 5. A. close | B. closed | C. closest | D. closing |
| 6. A. sight | B. sighting | C. sightseeing | D. sightseer |
| 7. A. catch | B. take | C. bring | D. keep |
| 8. A. welcome | B. welcoming | C. welcomed | D. being welcomed |
| 9. A. city | B. town | C. urban | D. field |
| 10. A. keeps | B. continues | C. lives | D. survives |

XI. Read the passage below carefully and choose the correct answer A, B, C or D

Although no one knows for certain who the original Saint Valentine was, once a year, on February 14, there is a day in his honor. Some historians believe that the original Saint Valentine was a priest who lived in the city of Rome about 300 years after the birth of Christ. The emperor of Rome was not a Christian and refused to allow people to be married in a Christian ceremony. Saint Valentine didn't obey the emperor and performed many Christian marriages, in spite of the

Unit 5

WONDERS OF VIETNAM

PART 1: GRAMMAR REVIEW

TENSES	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
1. The simple present	S + V (-s /es)	S + am/ is/ are + Vpp
2. The present continuous	S + am/ is/ are + V-ing	S + am/ is/ are/ + being + Vpp
3. The present perfect	S + have/ has + Vpp	S + have/ has + been + Vpp
4. The present perfect continuous	S + have/ has + been + V-ing	S + have/ has + been + being + Vpp
5. The simple past	S + V2/ V-ed	S + was/ were + Vpp
6. The past continuous	S + was/ were + V- ing	S + was/ were + being + Vpp
7. The past perfect	S + had + Vpp	S + had + been + Vpp
8. The past perfect continuous	S + had + been + V-ing	S + had + been + being + Vpp
9. The simple future	S + will/ shall + V	S + will/ shall + be + Vpp
10. The simple continuous	S + will/ shall + be + V-ing	S + will/ shall + be + being + Vpp
11. The simple future perfect	S + will/ shall + have + Vpp	S + will/ shall + have + been + Vpp
12. The near future	S + be going to + V	S + be going to + be + Vpp
13. Modal Verbs	S + Modal + V-bareInf	S + Modal + be + Vpp

I. CÁC DẠNG BỊ ĐỘNG ĐẶC BIỆT.

1. Mệnh đề có hoặc không có “that”: (Thể bị động không ngôi: The impersonal passive)

Chúng ta sử dụng thể bị động không ngôi để diễn tả ý kiến của người khác. Thường sử dụng với động từ tường thuật: **say/ think/ believe/ know/ hope/ expect/ report/ understand/ claim/ suppose/ consider....**

S1 + think/expect/believe/estimate/say/report + that + S2 + V2 + O

a. *It is thought/expected/believed/estimated/said/reported that + S2 + V2 + O*

b. *S2 is thought/expected/believed/estimated/said/reported + to V2*

+ to have + V2 p2

+ to be V2 -ing

+ to have + been + V2-ing

Ex:

- People think he **drives** dangerously.

=> It's thought that he drives dangerously.

=> He is thought to drive dangerously.

- People say he **was** a teacher.

=> It's said that he was a teacher.

=> He is said to have been a teacher.

- They think that he **worked** very hard last year.

=> He is thought to have worked very hard last year.

=> It is thought that he worked very hard last year.

- People said that she had been very kind.

=> It was said that she had been very kind.

=> She was said to have been very kind.

Note:

V1 – PII = *said/ thought/ believed/ known/ hoped/ expected/ reported/ understood/ claimed/ supposed/ considered....*

2. S + have + Sb + do something => S+ have/get + sth + done

S + get/ ask/ employ + Sb + to do something => S + get + sth + done

Ex:

- He had his waiter carry the luggage home

=> He had the luggage carried home by the waiter.

- I got the postman to post the letter for me.

=> I had the letter posted for me by the postman.

II. THE USE OF “SUGGEST” (CÁCH DÙNG: SUGGEST)

Sau động từ “**Suggest**” (đề nghị, đề xuất, kiến nghị), chúng ta có thể dùng V -ing hay một mệnh đề với “**Should**”

S + suggest + V - ing

S + suggest + (that) + S + (should) + bare infinitive

Chúng ta sử dụng **“Suggest + V -ing”** hay một mệnh đề với **“Should”**, để gợi ý ai đó về những gì họ nên làm.

Ex:

- He suggested travelling together for safety, since the area was so dangerous.

- She suggests that we should go out for dinner.

- His doctor suggested that he should reduce his working hours and take some exercises.

PART 2: PRACTICE

A. PHONETICS AND PHONOLOGY

I. Find the word which has a different sound in the underlined part.

1. A. raise B. blocks C. museum D. pyramids
2. A. ancient B. enclose C. block D. rank
3. A. chamber B. belongings C. tomb D. block
4. A. technique B. architect C. dedicate D. chamber
5. A. consist B. treasure C. suggest D. surpass

II. Choose a word in each line that has different stress pattern.

1. A. security B. rickshaw C. citadel D. landscape
2. A. contestant B. cavern C. astounding D. connect
3. A. picturesque B. souvenir C. recommend D. paradise
4. A. preserve B. position C. heritage D. impress
5. A. collect B. institution C. spectacular D. administer

B. VOCABULARY & GRAMMAR

I. Complete each of the sentences with one appropriate word from the box.

chamber	burial	tomb	belongings	spiral
treasures	ramps	wonders	mysterious	man-made

1. Many forgotten _____ have been discovered in the attics of the old houses.
2. She collected up her personal _____ and left.
3. We want to give him a decent Christian _____.
4. Iceland is full hot springs, beautifully coloured rocks, and other natural _____.
5. Rayon is _____ fiber.
6. Drivers transfer from the water to a decompression _____.
7. A _____ is a grave where a dead person is buried.
8. Special _____ have been designed for wheelchair access.
9. A snail's shell is _____ in form.
10. The are investigating the _____ disappearance of the plane.

II. Use the correct voice (active or passive) and the correct tense of the verb in sentences.

1. Almost everyone (enjoy) _____ the lecture last night.
2. English (teach) _____ in the schools of almost every nation.
3. That proposal (consider) _____ by the members right now.
4. Smith (teach) _____ at the University of Washington since 1999.
5. That old red house (build) _____ in the year 1822.
6. The report (examine, not) _____ by the committee of experts yet.
7. Cocktails (serve) _____ to the guests at the party last night
8. Everything (go) _____ well so far. There (be) _____ no trouble yet.
9. Listen to this. I think this news (surprise) _____ you.
10. The noise from the trains (annoy) _____ me terribly last night.

III. Change into passive voice.

1. The teacher always welcomes new students.

→ _____

2. People speak English all over the world.

→ _____

3. Thomas Edison invented the phonograph in 1877.

→ _____

4. The police found two children in the forest.

→ _____

5. They will send your order as soon as possible.

→ _____

6. The scientists are studying the problem carefully.

→ _____

7. Pat Murphy was riding the horse.

→ _____

8. The police have just arrested the robbers.

→ _____

9. Sue told us she had born her baby.

→ _____

10. They can use this room after 5 p.m.

→ _____

IV. Give the correct form of the word in CAPITALS to complete each of the following sentences.

- | | |
|---|------------------|
| 1. Many more tourists have visited Ha Long Bay since UNESCO's _____ of this beautiful spot. | RECOGNISE |
| 2. Bai Dinh Pagoda is a _____ site which is located in Ninh Binh province. | RELIGION |
| 3. May I have a _____ about the trip to Cuc Phuong National Park next week? | SUGGEST |
| 4. My most _____ experience was my trip to Hoi An in the summer of 2015. | FORGET |
| 5. We got a lot of _____ from our holiday in Da Nang last year. | ENJOY |
| 6. There are many sculptures along the _____ to the main temple. | ENTER |
| 7. Protecting natural wonders brings both social and _____ benefits. | FINANCE |
| 8. Phong Nha - Ke Bang can be compared to a precious _____ museum. | GEOLOGY |
| 9. The show features six _____ from different parts of the country. | CONTEST |
| 10. Chua Keo (in Thai Binh province) is a _____ pagoda which was build about 400 years ago. | WOOD |

V. Choose the best one (A, B, C or D) to complete the sentence.

1. Tomatoes _____ before they are completely ripe.
A. can be picked B. can pick C. needn't pick D. should be picking
2. It _____ that the road through the national park will not affect the environment and living habitat of wild animals there.
A. has thought B. had been thought C. is thought D. thinks
3. The refreshments _____ By Karen.
A. are going to be prepared B. are going to prepare
C. are preparing D. are to prepare
4. Trang An Landscape Complex is renowned for its diverse ecosystem, unique natural beauty _____ and characteristics.
A. environmental B. ecological C. geology D. geological
5. It that _____ 70 tons of dead fish washed ashore along more than 200 kilometres of Viet Nam's central coastline in early April.
A. was reported B. had reported
C. had been reported D. were reported
6. The keys _____ somewhere.
A. must have been leaving B. must have left
C. must be leaving D. must have been left
7. The Ho Dynasty Citadel has a palace _____ with marble roads that connect each palace.
A. complex B. building C. area D. setting
8. It _____ that the Perfume Pagoda is located in the interior of a cave to the top of the Huong Tich mountains.
A. is spoken B. is told C. says D. is said
9. Japanese _____ at the meeting.
A. will speak B. will spoken C. will be spoken D. will be speaking
10. The towers of the My Son sanctuary are the most significant _____ of the My Son civilization.
A. apartments B. plans C. structures D. arrangements
11. Ha Noi's four sacred temples, the _____ of Ha Noi were built to defend the four directions (East, West, South, North) of the ancient Thang Long capital city.
A. communication B. feelings C. energy D. spirits
12. Portuguese _____ as an official language in this city since three hundred years ago.
A. has always been spoken B. has been spoken always
C. has always spoken D. had always spoken
13. The Thang Long Imperial Citadel was the _____ of political power for nearly seven centuries without interruption.
A. system B. centre C. middle D. point
14. _____ in simpler words?
A. Has this issue expressed C. Cannot issue express
C. Can this issue express D. Could not this issue be expressed

15. All traffic laws _____.

A. is observed

B. must be observed

C. must have observed

D. had better observe

C. READING

I. Read the following passage and choose the best option for each numbered blank.

different	proud	as	pours	to visit
few	attracting	from	anywhere	in front

DA LAT - DREAM CITY

Da Lat lies on Lam Vien plateau, in the Central Highland province of Lam Dong. 300 kilometres north of Ho Chi Minh City. Da Lat is a well-known city (1)_____ all the people who have been there once. Da Lat is known (2)_____ a city of pine trees, waterfalls and flowers. Da Lat is described as a forest of flowers with (3)_____ colours and various species. Flowers can be found (4)_____ and in any season. We can see flowers in Da Lat in the parks, (5)_____ of the houses, in the gardens etc. Da Lat has the widest range of orchid varieties in the country. Da Lat has (6)_____ rivers and canals but it has many picturesque waterfalls. It takes tourists several days (7)_____ all the waterfalls in the area. The famous Cam Ly Falls is only 3 kilometres (8)_____ the town centre. The Prenn Falls is 10 kilometres in the south of Da Lat. The water (9)_____ down like a white shade. Da Lat people are very (10)_____ of it. They always boast to tourists about it in the first place. Around the Prenn Falls is the valley of various flowers and pine hills.

II. Read the passage, and fill in the blank with the suitable word.

Around 60 kilometers southwest of Ha Noi, Perfume Pagoda is one of the largest (1)_____ sites in Huong Son Commune, My Duc District. It comprises a complex of pagodas and Buddhist shrines (2)_____ into the limestone cliffs of Perfume Mount, spreading alongside the (3)_____ up to the peak. The complex's center is Inner Temple, right inside Huong Tich Cavern. Huge numbers of pilgrims flock to the site (4)_____ Perfume Pagoda Festival, which begins in the middle of the (5)_____ lunar month and (6)_____ until the middle of the third one (or from February to April) in order to (7)_____ for happiness and prosperity in the coming year. Also, it is a very popular opportunity for young (8)_____ to meet and for numerous romances to be (9)_____. On this special occasion, a wide range of traditional cultural activities is incorporated. Perfume Pagoda is not only a religious site, but a great sight-seeing (10)_____ in Viet Nam as well.

D. WRITING

I. Change to the passive voice.

1. People know that he is armed.

→ _____

2. It is believed that the man was killed by terrorists.

→ _____

3. People think that the company is planning a new advertising campaign.

→ _____

4. It was reported that the President had suffered a heart attack.

→ _____

5. It is alleged that the man was driving at 110 miles an hour.

→ _____

6. People know that the expedition reached the South Pole in May.

→ _____

7. It is said that there is a secret tunnel between them.

→ _____

8. People consider that she was the best singer that Australia has ever produced.

→ _____

9. It is expected that the weather will be good tomorrow.

→ _____

10. A lot of people believe that the Prime Minister and his wife have separated.

→ _____

II. Change to the active voice.

1. Progress in science is being made day after day.

→ _____

2. The palace was designed by a French architect.

→ _____

3. The road in front of my house has been paved.

→ _____

4. You can see that the dishes haven't been washed.

→ _____

5. Our salaries will not be increased this year.

→ _____

6. Wasn't that theatre built two years ago?

→ _____

7. The problem may be discussed again.

→ _____

8. My brother has been offered a well-paid job.

→ _____

9. It is reported that the war started again in South America.

→ _____

10. I was told that his football team had played well last season.

→ _____

PART 3: TEST YOURSELF

I. Find the word which has a different sound in the underlined part.

- | | | | |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. A. <u>i</u> sland | B. <u>p</u> ilgrim | C. sur <u>p</u> rising | D. sh <u>r</u> ine |
| 2. A. sc <u>u</u> lpture | B. str <u>u</u> cture | C. <u>f</u> uture | D. <u>c</u> ulture |
| 3. A. <u>c</u> omplex | B. <u>c</u> itadel | C. <u>c</u> avern | D. <u>c</u> ontestant |
| 4. A. <u>p</u> leasure | B. <u>m</u> easure | C. <u>t</u> reasure | D. <u>g</u> reat |
| 5. A. <u>a</u> ging | B. <u>c</u> avern | C. <u>c</u> ave | D. <u>a</u> ncient |

II. Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|-------------------|----------------|---------------|
| 1. A. historical | B. fascinating | C. valuable | D. memorable |
| 2. A. archaeology | B. administrative | C. geological | D. ecological |
| 3. A. design | B. occasion | C. depend | D. puppet |
| 4. A. committee | B. astounding | C. picturesque | D. contestant |
| 5. A. spectacular | B. imperial | C. recognition | D. historical |

III. Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.

- The expert explained that the upper _____ of the bridge was in very bad condition.
A. building B. structure C. foundation D. roof
- Something _____ immediately to prevent teenagers from _____ in factories and mines.
A. should be done – being exploited B. we should do – exploiting
C. should be – be exploited D. should have been – exploited
- In 1978, the south and north Cat Tien parks were put _____ the State's protection.
A. above B. with C. of D. under
- Architect Kasik is honoured with his statue in Hoi An in _____ for his restoration work done at the My Son Sanctuary.
A. recognition B. admiration C. agreement D. knowledge
- This car _____.
A. was manufactured in Japan by Toyota last year.
B. was manufactured by Toyota last year in Japan.
C. was manufactured last year in Japan by Toyota.
D. last year was manufactured in Japan by Toyota.
- It _____ that China dug up the ocean floor to build artificial islands.
A. would be said B. is said C. says D. said
- The Thang Long Imperial Citadel was built on the location of a Chinese _____ dating from the 7th century.
A. border B. soldier C. battle D. fortress
- The situation _____ to continue.
A. cannot allow B. cannot be allowed
C. cannot have allowed D. cannot be allowing

9. The public suggested that the factories _____ with waste treatment system.
A. would equip B. would be equipped
C. should equip D. should be equipped
10. Talking about Tay Phuong Pagoda means talking about a treasure of _____, an invaluable cultural and historical heritage.
A. items B. stone C. sculpture D. objects
11. The machine _____ on by pressing this switch.
A. can turn B. can be turned C. must turn D. should be turning
12. The local government suggested _____ a road through the Nam Cat Tien National Park.
A. build B. to build C. building D. being built
13. India will provide technical experts, supporting equipment and materials necessary for the restoration of _____ in My Son.
A. churches B. pagodas C. mosques D. towers
14. Everybody agrees that no more staff _____.
A. should employ B. should not be employed
C. will not be employed D. will be employed
15. It _____ that some foreigners had collected rubbish on Cat Ba Beach.
A. could report B. had been reported
C. reported D. was reported
16. The most important thing is that we _____ foreign tourists come back to Viet Nam again.
A. will make B. should make C. cause D. should cause
17. The next meeting _____ in May.
A. will hold B. will be held C. will be holding D. will have held
18. Things _____ clear to them so that they can do the work in the way that you have told them.
A. are making B. ought to be made C. have made D. needn't be made
19. Cigarettes _____ at a bakery.
A. must buy B. cannot buy C. cannot be bought D. should not buy
20. Hundreds of thousands of _____ travel to Perfume Pagoda to pray for happiness prosperity in the coming year.
A. pilgrimages B. pilgrims C. passengers D. holiday-makers

10. Talking about Tay Phuong Pagoda means talking about a treasure of _____, an invaluable cultural and historical heritage.

11. The machine _____ on by pressing this switch.

12. The local government suggested _____ a road through the Nam Cat Tien National Park.
A. build B. to build C. building D. being built

13. India will provide technical experts, supporting equipment and materials necessary for the restoration of _____ in My Son.
- A. churches B. pagodas C. mosques D. towers

14. Everybody agrees that no more staff _____.
- A. should employ B. should not be employed
- C. will not be employed D. will be employed

15. It _____ that some foreigners had collected rubbish on Cat Ba Beach.
- A. could report B. had been reported
- C. reported D. was reported

16. The most important thing is that we _____ foreign tourists come back to Viet Nam again.
- A. will make B. should make C. cause D. should cause

17. The next meeting _____ in May.
- A. will hold B. will be held C. will be holding D. will have held

18. Things _____ clear to them so that they can do the work in the way that you have told them.
- A. are making B. ought to be made C. have made D. needn't be made

19. Cigarettes _____ at a bakery.
A. must buy B. cannot buy C. cannot be bought D. should not buy

20. Hundreds of thousands of _____ travel to Perfume Pagoda to pray for happiness and prosperity in the coming year.
- A. pilgrimages B. pilgrims C. passengers D. holiday-makers

IV. Give the correct form of the verb in the box to complete the following sentences.

cost	replace	sew	pollute	whisper
discover	forget	repeat	tell	wrap

1. Jack has a right to know. He ought to _____ the news immediately. If you don't do it, I will.
2. I have no patience with gossips. What I told Bill was a secret. He shouldn't have _____ it to you.

3. Use this brown paper and tape. A package has to _____ carefully before it is mailed. Otherwise, the post office won't send it.
4. I don't know why Jessica wasn't at the meeting. She must have _____ about it. Next time there's a meeting. I'll be sure to remind her about it.
5. The ancient ruins must have _____ as early as 1974. The historical record is difficult to interpret.
6. You should _____ this button back on right away before you lose it.
7. This burnt out light bulb should have _____ days ago. There are some new bulbs in the green cabinet. Could you get one for me?
8. Did you know that Sylvia bought a new sports car? I don't know how much she paid for it, and of course it's none of my business, but it must have _____ her lots of money.
9. Shhh! Let's not talk so loudly. We don't want to awaken the baby. We'd better _____.
10. You'd better not drink that river water. It could _____.

V. Read the following passage and choose the best option for each numbered blank.

including	scientific	between	lung	recognized
botanical	river	attractions	protected	as

Formed on the vast delta of the (1) _____ mouths of Dong Nai, Sai Gon and Vam Co, Can Gio Mangrove Forest in Ho Chi Minh City is an ecosystem (2) _____ aquatic ecosystem and land ecosystem, freshwater ecosystem and marine ecosystem, (3) _____ 150 flora species, 744 fauna species, 130 species of birds and 130 species of fish. In the core zone of Can Gio Mangrove Forest, Ho Chi Minh City invested to build Vam Sat Ecological Tourist Site with many tourist (4) _____ such as: a crocodile farm, a bat lagoon, a bird yard, Tang Bong Tower, a (5) _____ garden and many games of fishing crocodile, sailing boats, rowing boats...

Can Gio is the green (6) _____ of Ho Chi Minh City and is assessed as the best restored, care and (7) _____ place in Viet Nam and worldwide. This is also the ideal place for eco-tourism and (8) _____ research. On 21 January 2000, UNESCO (9) _____ Can Gio (10) _____ a world biosphere reserve.

VI. Read the passage, and choose the correct answer A, B, C or D for each question.

The Complex of Hue Monuments is a UNESCO World Heritage Site and is located in the city of Hue in central Vietnam. Hue was founded as the Viet Nam capital city by Gia Long, the first king of the Nguyen Dynasty in 1802. It held this position for thirteen Nguyen kings until 1945.

The massive complex features hundreds of monuments and mins, such as the Forbidden Purple City, once the residence of the royal family and badly damaged during the Vietnam War. the Imperial City, royal tombs, the flag tower, pagodas, temples, a library and museum.

Hue, located on the banks of the Huong River, (also known as the Perfume River) is about a hundred kilometres north of Da Nang. Among the most impressive monuments in this former grand imperial capital are the Ngo Mon Gate of the Imperial City which once was exclusively used by the royal family and their servants and soldiers, the tomb of Emperor Minh Mang as well as the tomb of Emperor Tu DuC. In fact, many of the monuments surrounding the royal

buildings were constructed in the early 19th century and were modeled after Beijing's Forbidden City. The wall that surrounds the citadel is six metres high and two and a half kilometres long.

The historical complex is known not only for its rich architecture but also for its beautiful landscape setting. Overall, the site is quite spectacular. Avoid Hue between October and December as it gets most of its rain from the northeast monsoon during that period. This small city is also famous for its Imperial-style cuisine.

- The Hue Citadel needs the work of restoration because of _____.
A. the period from 1802 to 1945 B. the damage during the war
C. the northeast monsoon D. its rich architecture
- All of the following are mentioned as features of the Hue Citadel EXCEPT _____.
A. a library and museum B. the flag tower
C. the Temple of Literature D. the royal tombs
- All of the following are advantages of Hue EXCEPT _____.
A. the last three months of the year B. its beauty of natural setting
C. the waterway of the Perfume River D. the art of cooking
- The Complex of Hue Monuments _____.
A. was built by thirteen Nguyen kings from 1802 to 1945
B. is located on the left bank of the Perfume River
C. has its buildings built during the reign of King Gia Long
D. is recognized as a UNESCO World Heritage Site

VII. Choose the word or phrase A, B, C or D that needs correcting.

- The children were frightening by the thunder and lightning.
A B C D
- Two people got hurt in the accident and were took to the hospital by an ambulance.
A B C D
- The students helped by the clear explanation that the teacher gave.
A B C D
- That alloy is composing by iron and tin.
A B C D
- The winter of the race hasn't been announcing yet.
A B C D
- Progress is been made every day in all parts of the world.
A B C D
- When, where and by whom has the automobile invented?
A B C D
- Each assembly kit is accompany by detailed instruction.
A B C D
- Arthur was giving an award by the city for all of his efforts in crime prevention.
A B C D

10. It was late and I was getting very worry about my son.

A

B

C

D

VIII. Change these sentences into the passive voice.

1. It is reported that the building has been badly damaged by the fire.

→

2. The Greens had a carpet cleaner clean their carpet.

→

3. People believe that he has special knowledge which may be useful to the police.

→

4. Journalists suppose that the footballer is earning ten million pounds a year.

→

5. It is reported that the damage is extensive.

→

6. People were watching the game outside the stadium on a huge screen.

→

7. The south coast continues to attract holidaymakers.

→

8. Somebody has described Keith Jones as the world's greatest guitarist.

→

9. Robert always hated other children teasing him.

→

10. Somebody should have offered Marry a drink when she arrived.

Unit
6

VIETNAM: THEN AND NOW

PART 1: GRAMMAR REVIEW

1. PAST PERFECT (QUÁ KHỨ HOÀN THÀNH)

a. Form:

- (+) S + **had** + Vp2/ed + O
 (-) S + **hadn't** + Vp2/ed + O
 (?) **Had** (not) + S + Vp2/ed + O?

b. Uses (Cách sử dụng)

- Diễn tả một hành động xảy ra trước 1 hành động khác trong QK (hành động xảy ra trước dùng QKHT; hành động xảy ra sau dùng QKĐ)

Ex: I had never seen such a beautiful beach before I went to Kauai.

- Hành động xảy ra trước 1 thời điểm xác định trong quá khứ.

Ex: I had worked as a librarian before 2010. (*Trước năm 2010, tôi là một quản thư*)

c. Adverbs (Trạng ngữ nhận biết)

- When, before, after

TLĐ/ TLHT/ HTĐ +	WHEN	+ HTĐ
QK +	WHEN	+ QKĐ
QKĐ/ QKTD +	WHEN	+ QKTD
TLĐ/ TLHT/ TLHTTD +	BEFORE	+ HTĐ
QKHT +	BEFORE	+ QKĐ
	HTHT	+ BEFORE
QKĐ +	AFTER	+ QKHT
WHEN = AS = AS SOON AS = UNTIL = BY THE TIME		

2. **ADJECTIVE + TO -INFINITIVE:** Thật thế nào (đối với ai) khi làm gì (dùng để nhấn mạnh thông tin).

It + be + adjective (for sb) + to-infinitive

Ex: - It is necessary (for you) to know another language.

- It is kind of you to help me.

* Các tính từ thường được sử dụng trong cấu trúc này là các tính từ chỉ cảm xúc, chắc chắn, hay lo lắng như: happy, glad, pleased, sorry, certain, sure, confident, convinced, afraid, annoyed, astonished, conscious,...

Ex: - I am glad to see you again.

- I am certain that you will pass the exam.

PART 2: PRACTICE

A. PHONETICS AND PHONOLOGY

I. Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|----------------|----------------|-----------------|
| 1. A. elevated | B. facility | C. significant | D. initially |
| 2. A. cooperative | B. anniversary | C. illiteracy | D. considerable |
| 3. A. complete | B. complain | C. company | D. computer |
| 4. A. economic | B. electric | C. engineer | D. entertain |
| 5. A. technology | B. opportunity | C. curiosity | D. information |

II. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others.

- | | | | |
|-----------------------|--------------------|-------------------------|----------------------|
| 1. A. <u>y</u> acht | B. <u>ch</u> apter | C. <u>m</u> anage | D. <u>p</u> anel |
| 2. A. <u>e</u> xample | B. <u>f</u> eed | C. <u>i</u> nk | D. <u>i</u> nhumane |
| 3. A. <u>j</u> unior | B. <u>h</u> umour | C. <u>s</u> te <u>w</u> | D. <u>f</u> ew |
| 4. A. <u>h</u> all | B. <u>d</u> oll | C. <u>ch</u> alk | D. <u>f</u> orecast |
| 5. A. <u>r</u> emake | B. <u>r</u> efund | C. <u>r</u> econcile | D. <u>r</u> eproduce |

B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

I. Rewrite the following sentences using “It + be + adjective + (of/ for + noun/ pronoun)”.

- The students were unreasonable to complain about the exam results.

- The shelves are simple to put up.

- Hung was confident to present his ideas in front of the committee.

- We were surprised to get the scholarships.

- She was impolite to criticize him in front of his friends.

- Anna was brave to spend the night in the old house alone.

- Such a wonderful performance was interesting to hear.

- You were very kind to give presents to street children before the new school year.

- English is necessary to learn now.

- Our living environment is so important to preserve.

II. Choose the correct answers A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.

- Survey findings _____ that the current family remains an important production unit of society.
A. express B. show C. explain D. record
- Before 1975 in South Viet Nam, there _____ 3 state universities built in cities of Hue, Saigon, Can Tho.
A. were B. would be C. was D. used to be
- Many workers wish that they _____ labour contracts with the companies.
A. were signing B. sign C. signed D. were signed
- On arrival at home I (find)_____ that she just (leave)_____ just a few minutes before.
A. had found – left B. have found – have just left
C. found – had just left D. found – left
- We wish that smart boards _____ in our school.
A. was installed B. would install C. had installed D. were installed
- The photos by a British diplomat capture the _____ of old bicycles crowded electric trams, the queue to buy goods and lines of barrels waiting to collect water in the 1980s.
A. minds B. thinking C. ideas D. images
- After people had asked for scholars' handwriting, they _____ them up during the Tet festival.
A had hung B. hang C. hung D. hanged
- The life at that time was very difficult _____ every family tried to buy a branch of peach blossoms to display on the Lunar New Year Festival.
A. despite B. although C. but D. so
- We suggest that the authorities _____ street children from following foreign tourists in the downtown.
A. should stop B. will stop C. stopped D. would stop
- After they _____ their breakfast, they _____ shopping, yesterday.
A. have – go B. had had – go C. had – had gone D. had had – went

III. Fill in each blank with the correct preposition.

- The young birds depend _____ their parents for food _____ several weeks.
- This job is a lot of different _____ what I'm used to.
- Most students are interested _____ sports.
- The teacher divided the class _____ five groups.
- His breakfast consists _____ dry bread and a cup of tea.
- Their yard is separated _____ the factory _____ a tall fence.
- _____ Friday, Maryam wanted to visit the mosque _____ Hang Luoc Street.
- How long is she planning to stay _____ you?
- We haven't seen Jane _____ a while.
- I walked _____ several hotels _____ my way _____ the gas station.

IV. Complete each of the following sentences using the correct form of a verb from the box.

see	live	study	already/ graduate	work
forget	have	want	sing	play

1. He _____ from high school when we met him.
2. She got up, _____ breakfast, and left.
3. It was a beautiful morning. The sun was shining, and the birds _____.
4. I was sure I _____ him somewhere before, but I couldn't remember where.
5. Linda walked out of her flat. As she shut the door, she realized she _____ the key.
6. My leg started to hurt when I _____ football.
7. Minh grew up in the countryside, and he in _____ Ha Noi for a few years in the 2010s.
8. When I was a child, I didn't know what job I _____ to do in the future.
9. The fire alarm went off when we _____ a math lesson.
10. My brother _____ when I called him this afternoon.

C. READING

I. Read the passage and fill in the blanks with suitable words.

Being the first and also the oldest high school in Hue, originally Quoc Hoc (National High School) was the school for children from royal and noble families. French colonialists opened this school in 1896 to train those (1)_____ would serve the government. Therefore, at that time, French was the main subject for students. Now it is (2)_____ Hue National High School and is a high-profile school that all students must pass a competitive (3)_____ exam to get the admission.

Established in 1896, after more than 100-year history, the school today is considered the largest and also the most beautiful high school (4)_____ in Viet Nam. This surrounding makes a great picture of red French designed buildings in Harmony with green (5)_____ of a large shady trees and stone benches.

(6)_____ in spring, when “diep anh dao” (a kind of cherry blossoms) is in bloom, the whole picture is filled with pinky dots above red thatched tile. Students often call that (7)_____ of time “Pinky cloud season” and regard it as the most special moments of a year. These are the reasons why Quoc Hoc is also (8)_____ “Pinky school beside Perfume River Bank” in the song with the same name.

Moreover, several Vietnamese (9)_____ leaders have been learning here, including: Nguyen Tat Thanh (President Ho Chi Minh), General Vo Nguyen Giap, Prime Minister Pham Van Dong, etc. In addition, the school is famed for its students who are well-known poets (Xuan Dieu, Huy Can, To Huu, Luu Trong Le etc.), scientists (Ta Quang Buu, Ton That Tung, Dang Van Ngu, etc.), musicians (Tran Hoan, Nguyen Van Thuong, etc.). The school also has students getting high prizes in many international (10)_____.

II. Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

Seventy percent of people in Viet Nam live in rural areas. Most of these people (1)_____ their living by caring for farm animals like pigs. Other common jobs are crop farming and fishing. For many of these farmers and fishermen, animal and plant waste is still a problem.

Many women and children cook meals using traditional cooking fuels. They also spend many hours (2)_____ wood and other materials to burn. This process takes time and also uses a lot of natural resources. Moreover, they suffer the same health (3)_____. Cooking was a difficult and dangerous job. The kitchen was smoky, and the black ash would make people cough, and (4)_____ pain in the eyes.

But a biogas system can (5)_____ all of these problems! It can turn animal or plant waste (6)_____ valuable resources – such as cooking fuel, electricity and plant fertilizer. First, an expert must build a system of pipes and tanks. This biogas system contains and manages the decaying process of animal or plant waste. To use the biogas system, a farmer must move animal waste into a pipe with water. These pipes bring the waste to a tank (7)_____ in the ground. This tank is called a bio-digester. Air cannot enter this tank. In this contained environment, natural bacteria decays the waste material. (8)_____ the waste decays in the bio-digester, it (9)_____ two things – biogas and slurry. The biogas rises to the top of the tank. The pressure from the gas pushes the liquid slurry into (10)_____. Now people can use both the biogas and the slurry.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|---------------|------------------|-----------------|
| 1. A. do | B. look for | C. earn | D. take |
| 2. A. looking | B. collecting | C. keeping | D. controlling |
| 3. A. concerns | B. importance | C. businesses | D. involvements |
| 4. A. bring | B. hurt | C. make | D. cause |
| 5. A. solve | B. deal | C. match | D. delete |
| 6. A. to | B. into | C. at | D. in |
| 7. A. bury | B. burying | C. buried | D. being buried |
| 8. A. Because | B. Moreover | C. Although | D. As |
| 9. A. produces | B. brings | C. gets | D. makes |
| 10. A. the tank | B. no tank | C. the same tank | D. another tank |

D. WRITING

I. Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it is as similar as possible in meaning to the original sentences. Use the word given and other words as necessary.

1. Supporting the victims after the disaster was kind of them.

=> _____

2. Valuing the improved living conditions we have today is necessary.

=> _____

3. Crossing the road without looking left and right was stupid of you.

=> _____

4. Going into the lift alone is afraid.

=> _____

5. Following the instructions carefully is important for all of us.

=> _____

6. Being able to build the country into a powerful one is certain.

=> _____

7. Speaking English with the foreigners is confident.

=> _____

8. Showing us the way to train station was kind of them.

=> _____

9. Using a long stick to get some fruits was very clever of him.

=> _____

10. Finding a parking space in the city centre is not easy for you.

=> _____

II. Write complete sentences, using the words/ phrases given in their correct forms. You can add some more necessary words, but you have to use all the words given.

1. The conversation/ take/ place/ the school's 60th anniversary.

=> _____

2. Our grandparents/ use/ live in an extended family.

=> _____

3. Because/ it explain/ a lot about how the school/ in the past.

=> _____

4. The roof/ made of tiles/ some tiles were broken./ The window frames/ made of wood/ some of them were missing.

=> _____

5. They/ learn that they/ lucky/ have/ such great learning facilities/ nowadays.

=> _____

6. My mother/ a sympathetic woman./ She always care/ how/ we feel.

=> _____

7. The boys/ willing to do/ what you want/ to./ They/ really obedient.

=> _____

8. Having students/ work/ groups,/ she hoped/ they could learn/ be cooperative.

=> _____

9. She/ tolerant with/ children even when/ they/ misbehave.

=> _____

10. Nowadays/ the nuclear family/ becoming more common/ the cities.

=> _____

PART 3: TEST YOURSELF

I. Choose the word whose main stress pattern is placed differently from the others.

1. A. invent

B. interact

C. develop

D. control

2. A. violent

B. popular

C. convenient

D. favorite

3. A. literature

B. newspaper

C. teenager

D. documentary

4. A. development

B. education

C. interactive

D. entertainment

5. A. benefit

B. commerce

C. time-consuming

D. computer

II. Fill in each blank in the passage with the correct word from the box.

childhood	books	goods	Wages	period
artifacts	coupons	fashionable	families	straw

The exhibition of the (1)_____ of the subsidy period in Viet Nam took place in Ha Noi attracted the attention of many people. During the historical period all goods were distributed through (2)_____. The electric fans, cups were indispensable items in the 1980s. The blanket printed with a peacock was a (3)_____ item of Ha Noi (4)_____. Each family tried to have at least one. The bike, a (5)_____ hat of the wartime are kept fairly intact. Most books of the subsidy (6)_____ are derived from the former Soviet Union. The (7)_____ of many people was associated with many (8)_____ about Lenin, the story of Doctor Aybolit. At that time, banknotes were rarely used; the (9)_____ were distributed by coupons. (10)_____ were sometimes paid by goods.

III. Complete the conversation about means of communication, using the responses (A-H) given.

- A. Our messages will be transferred at the speed of light in the future.
- B. Smoke was used as a means of communication from one mountain to another.
- C. With the invention of stamps.
- D. Only a few simple messages could be sent and received with this primitive method of smoke signals.
- E. People carry it together with the identity card, the keys and the wallet.
- F. The pigeons could fly to and fro to carry letters.
- G. It tells about the means of communication in the past, present, and the future.
- H. Carrier pigeon was another means communication to send messages further away.

John: Which book are you reading, Hung?

Hung: (1) _____

John: Wow, interesting! I think it has changed according to the changes in technology. What was first used for communication?

Hung: (2) _____

John: Maybe people only used smoke to ask for help or something like that.

Hung: (3) _____

John: What happened after that?

Hung: (4) _____

John: I've heard about that. The pigeons were trained for this two-way communication method of letter carrying.

Hung: Sure. (5) _____

John: Then people send letters by post.

- Hung:** (6) _____
 Right? After that, we have Morse codes, telegraphs, telephones, email with the Internet, and so on.
- John:** Now mobiles are the most popular.
- Hung:** Yeah. (7) _____

- John:** And the future? It is not difficult to predict the future of the communication.
- Hung:** (8) _____

IV. Find a mistake in the four underlined parts of each sentences and correct it.

- My sister had worked in the bank for five years before she had been sent to Da Nang.
 A B C D
- Tom said that he had been very excited visiting Ha Long Bay for the first time in 2005.
 A B C D
- The country has significant changed since we came here in 2007.
 A B C D
- All of us are astonished that life in the countryside to improve a lot.
 A B C D
- By the time she left the shop, she spent all of her money on clothes.
 A B C D

V. Put *ever, never, for or since* into each gap to complete the sentences.

- I've known him _____ over ten years, but I've _____ met his parents.
- We haven't had a barbecue _____ last summer. Have you _____ had a barbecue?
- His wife, Carrie, is a designer. She has her own studio _____ six months, _____ 8th June.
- My uncle has been at my house _____ 8.00 this morning. Have you _____ met him? – No, _____.
- I've known him _____ ages, but I haven't seen him _____ I was at university.
- Sue has lived in London _____ the last few years but she's _____ gone to Big Ben. Have you _____ gone there?
- I haven't seen Keith _____ Christmas.
- She's been in China _____ a long time, but she's _____ visited the Great Wall.
- He's worked for this company _____ many years, _____ 1976, I guess.
- We've been friends _____ we were children, and I've _____ liked anyone as much as I like him.

VI. Complete the passage with the correct form or tense of the words in brackets.

Television first (1) _____ (**appear**) some fifty years ago in the 1950s. Since then, it has (2) _____ (**be**) one of the most popular sources of (3) _____ (**entertain**) for both the old and the young. Television can (4) _____ (**actual**) satisfy almost all kinds of taste. It offers cartoons for children, world news, music and many other programs. If

someone is (5)_____ (interest) in sports, for example, he can tune in to a sports channel. There he can enjoy a live broadcast of an (6)_____ (nation) football match. Television is also a very (7)_____ (use) way for companies to advertise their products.

It's not too hard for us (8)_____ (see) why there is a TV set in almost every home today. And, engineers are developing (9)_____ (interact) TV which allows (10)_____ (communicate) between viewers and producers.

VII. Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

During the war, children wore straw hats to (1)_____ themselves from debris. Houses and schools were bombed and destroyed. Many children were made (2)_____ and their schools had to be moved around or lessons sometimes had to (3)_____ after dark to avoid being targeted by heavy bombing. Many schools had its roof (4)_____ with several layers of straw to withstand the (5)_____ of the bombs. Life for children was very hard in both the North and South of Viet Nam during the war.

Young people were (6)_____ of their duty to serve their country. Even young girls took part in the war efforts by digging bomb shelters. Children took first-aid courses after school so that they could (7)_____ injured people.

Childhood years of children born in the 1960s are (8)_____. As innocent children, they went to school (9)_____ straw hats in the sounds of American jet fighters in the sky and the shots from Vietnamese anti-aircraft guns.

Nowadays, they are proud that they came through those hardships. They had their heads held (10)_____ walking out of the war.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|------------------|--------------------|------------------|
| 1. A. protect | B. keep | C. save | D. help |
| 2. A. homemade | B. homeless | C. homelessness | D. homesick |
| 3. A. place | B. take place | C. be happened | D. exist |
| 4. A. cover | B. covering | C. covered | D. being covered |
| 5. A. reasons | B. causes | C. actions | D. impacts |
| 6. A. known | B. afraid | C. capable | D. aware |
| 7. A. care for | B. take after | C. take care about | D. deal |
| 8. A. unfortunate | B. unforgettable | C. forgettable | D. memorably |
| 9. A. wear | B. to wear | C. wearing | D. that wear |
| 10. A. high | B. highly | C. height | D. above |

VIII. Read the passage, and choose the correct answer A, B, C or D for each question.

Street Food Shoulder Poles on Saigon streets

Street food shoulder pole is familiar with Saigon people throughout many years. Nowadays it has become a special thing that makes travelers curious. In small areas of District 1 and District 3, we could count more than 100 vendors who earned money using shoulder poles. A shoulder pole, also called a carrying pole, is a **yoke** of wood or bamboo, used by people to carry a load. The vendors put their goods in two baskets from each end of the yoke.

In the downtown, we can meet young women with their shoulder poles. The baskets are covered with plastic wrap carefully to protect the foods from the street dust. In a tight space of

one basket, she could mix the ingredients and bake the cake on a small charcoal which was defended by carton. The ready cakes were put in other basket.

In the morning or evening, on rainy or sunny day, Saigon streets are marked by shoulder poles of people from different regions of the country, which has become a unique part of Saigon. It has been said that it isn't hard to live in Saigon if you work hard. With the carrying pole on shoulders, the vendor has turned it into a "store". The reason is very simple, they don't have enough money to open a real store. Every day these women continue their journey through Saigon streets under the sun and the rain, selling cheap things or street foods to earn money and feed their children.

1. A shoulder pole _____.
 - A. is the connection between wood and bamboo
 - B. used to be called a carrying pole
 - C. is a bar made of wood or bamboo
 - D. is used to put goods on street vendor's shoulders
2. Street food shoulder pole is _____.
 - A. used by street vendors to carry things
 - B. a characteristic of District 1 and 3
 - C. used to make foreign travelers curious
 - D. a way for passer-by to have food
3. All of the following are true about shoulder poles EXCEPT that _____.
 - A. street vendors can bake cakes there
 - B. the two baskets have the same function
 - C. they can contain enough things to serve some customers
 - D. they can be protected from dust
4. All of the following are benefits of shoulder poles EXCEPT that _____.
 - A. they can help street vendors to sell many things without a store
 - B. street vendors can support their families with the help of shoulder poles
 - C. it is a way for street vendors to carry goods around the streets
 - D. women are marked by unique shoulder poles from different regions
5. The word "yoke" in paragraph 1 is closest in meaning to _____.
 - A. a piece of wood that is shaped to fit across a person's shoulders to carry two equal loads
 - B. a wooden bar that is connected to the vehicles or loads so that they can be pulled away
 - C. something that connects two things or people, usually in a way that limits freedom
 - D. a long piece of wood that is fastened across the necks to pull heavy loads

IX. Read the following passage and fill in the blanks with suitable words.

Godolphin and Latymer School for girls is a private school in Hammersmith, West London. It (1)_____ originally a boy's school, but became a girls' (2)_____ in the early 1900s. The girls didn't wear a uniform. At that time, the school had twelve (3)_____, an assembly hall, a library, a cookery room, a gymnasium, and three science laboratories for chemistry, physics (4)_____ botany. The school had its own playing field, described as "lung of Hammersmith", (5)_____ the girls could play hockey, tennis, basketball and cricket. They

had (6) _____ play games twice a week, with gym once a week. There were 328 girls at the school in 1906.

There are now 700 girls aged (7) _____ 11 and 18 at the school. The younger pupils have to wear a uniform, but girls in the sixth form can wear whatever they like. Several additions (8) _____ been made to the original Victorian building. Now there is a computer studies room, a language laboratory, a pottery room, a new gymnasium and an ecology garden. (9) _____ newest buildings contain ten laboratories for science and technology, a workshop and darkroom, and art studios. (10) _____ are also improved facilities for music and drama. The playing field was recently converted into an all-weather surface for hockey and tennis.

X. Use the words and phrases to complete the sentences.

1. The adults/ take responsibility/ leading/ family.

2. If/ we/ not have/ forgiveness/ we/ not live/ happy/ extended family/ many members.

3. Nguyen Sieu Primary School/ Ha Noi/ introduce/ traditional games/ their curriculum/ recently.

4. The school/ like/ offer/ gentle form/ relaxation/ after/ hours/ study.

5. The students/ fifth grade/ play/ traditional games/ without/ instruction/ teachers.

6. Some students/ enjoying “Cat and Mouse game”/ while/ others/ interested/ play/ blind man’s bluff.

7. The school authorities/ want/ increase/ students’ affection/ school/ so that/ each day/ school/ full/ happiness.

8. Family members/ support/ other/ times/ trouble.

9. We/ have/ need/ love/ and/ loved/ so/ family/ normally/ place/ where/ love/ expressed.

10. It/ certain/ laughter/ positive way/ release tensions/ and/ gain/ close relationships.

XI. Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first.

1. It’s not a good idea to travel during the rush hour.
➔ It’s better to avoid _____
2. Michael laughed when I told him the joke.
➔ The joke _____
3. Don’t stop him doing what he wants.
➔ Let _____

4. We like to lie on the beach all day.

➔ We enjoy _____

5. Do you fancy going for a walk?

➔ Would you like _____

6. I wish I hadn't taken your advice.

➔ I regret _____

7. Seeing Nelson Mandela will always stay in my memory.

➔ I'll never forget _____

8. It was difficult for me to stop laughing at Wendy's letter.

➔ I couldn't help _____

9. Shall I phone you this evening?

➔ Do you want _____

10. It will be good to see them again.

➔ I'm looking _____

11. I'd prefer not to go out tonight.

➔ I'd rather _____

12. You'd better put your money in the bank, Jack.

➔ I advised _____

13. I can do what I want and you can't stop me.

➔ You can't _____

14. Please don't interrupt me all the time.

➔ Would you mind _____

15. My father said I could use his car.

➔ My father allowed _____

THE FIRST TERM TEST

I. Find the word which has a different sound in the underlined part.

1. A. closure B. structure C. sculpture D. future
2. A. aware B. cast C. craft D. carve
3. A. multicultural B. frustrated C. surface D. drumhead
4. A. cost B. preserve C. craftsman D. house-keeping
5. A. preserved B. embarrassed C. wandered D. embroidered

II. Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.

1. A. lacquerware B. determine C. fabulous D. skyscraper
2. A. metropolitan B. multicultural C. authenticity D. cooperative
3. A. contestant B. occasion C. underpass D. astonished
4. A. significant B. noticeable C. illiterate D. spectacular
5. A. contestant B. occasion C. underpass D. astonished

III. Choose the best one (A, B, C or D) to complete the sentence.

1. Lacquering is a uniquely-performed _____ in Viet Nam.
A. culture B. craft C. tradition D. production
2. The art gallery will be a new visitor _____ for the city.
A. place B. appeal C. interest D. attraction
3. The drawing and printing techniques have been _____ and inherited over many generations.
A. prevented B. treated C. preserved D. stored
4. Peter was expelled from the volunteer team _____ his misbehavior.
A. except for B. because of C. in spite of D. regardless of
5. There is a _____ of employment opportunities in a city.
A. group B. change C. type D. variety
6. Skillful hand-weaving techniques of the local _____ make Dinh An sedge mats a wonderful souvenir for visitors.
A. artefacts B. artisans C. artists D. actors
7. My sister asked me _____ to use the new washing machine.
A. why B. where C. how D. what
8. Maybe we are worried about something so our _____ keeps wandering over a particular issue.
A. feeling B. mind C. brain D. impression
9. In the central park, there is a statue _____ from a single block of marble.
A. carved B. built C. moulded D. cut

10. The bamboo used to make conical hats must be split into very thin strings and then put into water _____ they can avoid tearing and any breakage.
A. so that B. therefore C. because D. although
11. It's a truth that dogs can hear and see _____ better than humans.
A. very B. far more C. a lot D. much more
12. To consider an idea or a suggestion before deciding to accept it is to _____.
A. face up to B. take it up C. look it up D. go it over
13. We'd like our students to participate more _____ in the school's social programmes.
A. actively B. comprehensively C. basically D. dynamically
14. "Do you _____ your new classmate?"
A. face up to B. keep up with C. get on with D. look forward to
15. Yesterday, a policeman came and explained to us _____ to act and where to get help in emergencies.
A. how B. whether C. where D. what
16. All of my teachers, friends and relatives are asking me continually what careers I am interested in and I'm struggling to _____ a decision.
A. take B. offer C. do D. make
17. In many big cities, people have to _____ up with noise, overcrowding and bad air.
A. face B. put C. catch D. keep
18. I am unsure as to _____ fashion designing is the right career for me.
A. where B. how C. whether D. what
19. I wish I _____ all the natural and man-made wonders of Viet Nam.
A. could visit B. am visiting C. Visit D. will visit
20. Children in large families learn how to get _____ with other people.
A. across B. through C. along D. away

IV. There is a mistake in the four underlined parts of each sentence. Find the mistakes by circling A, B, C or D.

1. The study of the sculptures of the Cham people is truly fascinated, and some books have
A B C D
been written about them.
2. I haven't visited my grandparents when we came to live in the city.
A B C D
3. We still haven't got a sponsor although the fact that we've written to dozens of companies.
A B C D
4. People in the South speak more direct than people in the North do.
A B C D
5. According to many critics, Mark Twain's novel Huckleberry Finn is his greatest work and is
A B
is one of the greatest American novelists ever written.
C D

V. Fill in the blank with a suitable word.

Teenagers do not spend as much money as their parents suspect - at least not according to the findings of a (1)_____ survey. The survey (2)_____ 300 teenagers, 13-18 years old, from all over Britain.

By the time they reach their teens, most children see their weekly (3)_____ rise dramatically to an amazing national average of £20. Two thirds think they (4)_____ enough money, but most expect to have to do something to get it.

Although they have more cash, worry about debt is (5)_____ among teenagers. Therefore, the majority of children make an effort to (6)_____ some aside for the future.

Greater access (7)_____ cash among teenagers does not, however, mean that they are more irresponsible (8)_____ a result. Instead of wasting (9)_____ pocket money they have on sweets or magazines, the 13-year-old who took part in the survey seem to (10)_____ to the situation by saving more than half of their cash.

VI. Fill in the blank using the words in the box.

sharing	sources	parts	their	losing
on	looks	hands	consumers	was delivered

Subsidy economy from 1976 to 1986 means all (1)_____ of goods and raw materials are in the (2)_____ of the central government. The government coordinated all steps of economy from planning, collecting, and distributing to (3)_____. Each person (4)_____ with standard distributions which depended (5)_____ working level, age, rank and position in government or professional.

(6)_____ essential supplies had many problems, for example, four people shared a pair of bicycle tires, or even a blanket. Sometimes one pig was shared among 20 households, everyone wanted to take the good (7)_____ and very difficult to divide fairly. Moreover, because of bad storage and complicated delivery, many supplied foods were in bad condition, such as broken, rotten or even poisonous. Each family got (8)_____ own rice booklet shown date and number kilos of rice. During that time, the Vietnamese had a famous saying, “Your face (9)_____ sad like (10)_____ the rice booklet”.

VII. Read the passage below and decide which answer A, B, C or D fits each numbered gap.

Teenagers do not spend as much money as their parents suspect - at least not according to the findings of a (1)_____ survey. The survey (2)_____ teenagers, 13 – 18 years old, from all over Britain.

By the time they reach their teens, most children see their weekly (3)_____ rise dramatically to an amazing national average of £20. Two thirds think they (4)_____ enough money, but most expect to have to do something to get it.

Although they have more cash, worry about debt is (5) _____ among teenagers. Therefore, the majority of children make an effort to (6)_____ some aside for the future.

Greater access (7)_____ cash among teenagers does not, however, mean that they are more irresponsible (8)_____ a result. Instead of wasting (9)_____ pocket money they have on sweets or magazines, the 13-year-old who took part in the survey seem to (10)_____ to the situation by saving more than half of their cash.

- | | | | |
|------------------|-------------|--------------|----------------|
| 1. A. latest | B. fresh | C. late | D. recent |
| 2. A. counted | B. enclosed | C. included | D. contained |
| 3. A. bonus | B. profit | C. allowance | D. support |
| 4. A. make | B. get | C. accept | D. earn |
| 5. A. increasing | B. building | C. gaining | D. heightening |
| 6. A. spare | B. keep | C. put | D. save |
| 7. A. from | B. along | C. to | D. with |
| 8. A. for | B. in | C. like | D. as |
| 9. A. which | B. what | C. the | D. whether |
| 10. A. respond | B. return | C. reply | D. answer |

VIII. Read the passage, and choose the correct answer A, B, C or D for each question.

To preserve and develop traditional craft villages, in recent years, the local authorities have conducted preservation of four traditional crafts: brocade weaving, silver carving, blacksmithing, and carpentry to bring about economic and social efficiency for the development of provincial tourism...

Currently, the province of Lao Cai has formed the clear models of traditional villages. Cat Cat villages has gradually built its brand with the forging and casting products, textiles of linens of Hmong people. The famous alcohol villages have found their footholds in the market such as Pho village corn wine (Bac Ha), Xeo village wine (in Bat Xat commune).

The villages in the province have been associated with tourism spots and promote tourism development in the community, improve living standards of many families through their home business, selling handicrafts, brocade products.

In the past, in the villages in Sa Pa, people mostly make their living in agriculture, forestry, but now there have been many households getting involved in tourism activities of the village.

With the aim of preserving and developing traditional village linked to tourism development, most of the villages have created its own **definition** for tourists to learn and explore. In particular, brocade weaving is dominant, serving the needs of families and tourists. Only in Sa Pa district has 11 embroidery and weaving villages, in Ta Phin village, and San Sa Ho village with about 1000 households participating and a number of groups from the district women society, put on the market each year more than 30,000 metres of fabric. Other districts like Van Ban, Bac Ha have also formed several embroidery villages, attracting thousands of workers.

- We can infer from the passage that tourism has _____.
 A. prevented forests from being cut down
 B. found its footholds in the market
 C. raised labour income in rural areas
 D. made all farmers quit farming
- Cat Cat village is famous for _____.
 A. blacksmithing
 B. silver carving
 C. corn wine
 D. its textiles of linens
- The word “**definition**” in paragraph 3 is closest in meaning to _____.
 A. quality of being clear
 B. what tourism means
 C. descriptions of features
 D. explanation of the meaning

4. The purpose of preservation of traditional craft villages is bringing about _____.
 A. the start of tourism
 B. economic and social development
 C. the clear models of traditional villages
 weaving 30,000 metres of fabric
5. All of the following are true EXCEPT that _____.
 A. other districts should start preserving their craft like Sa Pa
 B. preservation of traditional crafts can be associated with tourism
 C. brocade weaving has become the most important craft in Sa Pa and nearby districts
 D. local people can sell handicrafts, brocade products to tourists

IX. Complete the following sentences using one of the following combinations.

away	on with	down on	up to	up with
in with	out of (x2)	away from	back on	

1. We've run _____ sugar. Could you buy some more?
2. Please don't let me disturb you. Carry _____ your work.
3. We must try to cut _____ the amount of money we spend. We just can't make ends meet.
4. Keep _____ me I've got a terrible cold, and I don't want to give it to you.
5. When I look _____ my childhood, I realize what a happy time it was.
6. The only people she looks _____ are her grandparents.
7. Children grow _____ their clothes so quickly. It costs a fortune to clothe them properly.
8. The antique table is very beautiful, but it doesn't fit _____ the rest of the furniture, which is modern.
9. I think the neighbors have gone _____ for the weekend.
10. John's up ahead so Greg is pedaling fast to catch _____ him.

Unit
7

RECIPES AND EATING HABITS

PART 1: GRAMMAR REVIEW

I. SOME AND ANY

- **SOME** và **ANY** là hai tính từ chỉ số lượng bất định. Chúng được dùng trước danh từ không đếm được hoặc danh từ đếm được số nhiều.

1. SOME (MỘT VÀI, MỘT ÍT)	2. ANY (NÀO)
- Some được dùng trong câu khẳng định và lời mời, yêu cầu	- Any được dùng trong câu phủ định hoặc câu hỏi.
<i>Ex:</i> Would you like some tea? (Bạn dùng một ít trà nhé?)	<i>Ex:</i> Do you have any pens? (Bạn có chiếc bút nào không?)
- Some đứng trước danh từ không đếm được hoặc danh từ đếm được số nhiều.	- Any đứng trước danh từ không đếm được hoặc danh từ đếm được số nhiều.
<i>Ex:</i> There are some butter. (Có một chút bơ) There are some eggs. (Có một vài quả trứng)	<i>Ex:</i> There isn't any butter. (Không có chút bơ nào cả.) Are there any eggs? (Có quả trứng nào không?)

II. MODAL VERBS IN CONDITIONAL SENTENCES TYPE 1

Động từ khuyết thiếu trong câu điều kiện loại 1.

If - clause (Mệnh đề If)	Main clause (Mệnh đề chính)
If + S + V (present simple)	S + will/ can/ may/ must + V (bare infinitive)

Câu điều kiện này điều kiện có thể hoặc không thể thực hiện trong tương lai.

Ex:

- I will buy a big house if I have enough money.
- I will be late for school if you don't drive faster.
- If he wants to pass the exam, he must study harder.

PART 2: PRACTICE

A. PHONETICS AND PHONOLOGY

I. Find the word which has a different sound in the underlined part.

- | | | | |
|-------------------------|---------------------|---------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. A. t <u>e</u> nder | B. ga <u>r</u> nish | C. dra <u>i</u> n | D. spr <u>i</u> ngle |
| 2. A. gr <u>i</u> ll | B. ga <u>r</u> nish | C. d <u>i</u> p | D. sl <u>i</u> ce |
| 3. A. h <u>e</u> ad | B. sp <u>e</u> ad | C. cr <u>ea</u> m | D. br <u>ea</u> d |
| 4. A. s <u>a</u> uce | B. s <u>t</u> eam | C. s <u>u</u> gar | D. s <u>t</u> ew |
| 5. A. mar <u>i</u> nate | B. gr <u>a</u> te | C. sh <u>a</u> llot | D. st <u>a</u> p <u>l</u> e |

II. Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|----------------|---------------|---------------|
| 1. A. tomato | B. nutritious | C. ingredient | D. tablespoon |
| 2. A. ingredient | B. traditional | C. repeat | D. avocado |
| 3. A. celery | B. benefit | C. engineer | D. versatile |
| 4. A. tender | B. simmer | C. cucumber | D. delicious |
| 5. A. significant | B. diverse | C. garnish | D. combine |

B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

I. Complete the sentences with *a, an, some or any*.

- There is _____ banana in the basket.
- I need _____ tea.
- Are there _____ tomatoes in the fridge?
- We have _____ rice, but we don't have meat.
- There's _____ orange on the table.
- I'd like _____ apple juice.
- He has _____ TV and _____ computer.
- Would you like _____ ice-cream?
- I have _____ friends in Hue.
- Do you have _____ dogs or cats at home?

II. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tenses of the conditionals.

- If you (**not go**) _____ away I'll send for the police.
- I'll be very angry if he (**make**) _____ any more mistakes.
- If he (**be**) _____ late we'll go without him.
- She will be absolutely furious if she (**hear**) _____ about this.
- If you put on the kettle I (**make**) _____ the tea.
- If you give my dog a bone he (**bury**) _____ it at once.
- If we leave the car here it (**not be**) _____ in anybody's way.
- He'll be late for the train if he (**not start**) _____ at once.
- If you come late they (**not let**) _____ you in.
- If he (**go**) _____ on telling lies nobody will believe a word he says.

III. Use the word given in capitals at the end of each line to form a word that fits in the gap in the same line.

All over the world, all different cultures created interesting (1)_____ meat products, and one of the most popular is undoubtedly sausage.

To begin with, sausage making may be considered (2)_____ as it deals with using various animal parts. Since meat is ground up, certain cuts and parts of an animal that wouldn't be (3)_____ in their original forms can be used. Literally, this means animal parts such as noses, ears, and other less (4)_____ areas of an animal's body. Very often, the ground up meat and flesh is (5)_____ with a certain percentage of fat, along with spices and other fillers. After being mixed well, this meat mixture is then stuffed into the cleaned intestines of the animal, which are then sealed at both ends. The result is sausage.

The meats used in sausages come from a variety of animals, although beef and pork are by far the favourites. In some cultures, sausage (6)_____ from the meat of horses is considered a (7)_____. When sausages are cooked, the cooking process sometimes adds to the flavour. While (8)_____ boiling is probably the simplest method, smoking sausages will add a lot of flavour.

Next time you bite into a sausage, it is probably (9)_____ not to think too much about how it became the (10)_____ thing you are eating. After all, you don't want to ruin a good snack.

PROCESSION

DISGUST

SERVANT

APPETIZE

MIXE

MAKE

DELICIOUS

SMOKE

GOOD

TASTE

IV. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.

1. Some of famous _____ in Southern Viet Nam are Hu Tieu Nam Vang, Bun Mam, fried rice, flour cake, and many kinds of puddings.

- A. stapes B. ingredients C. foods D. dishes

2. Beet greens are the most _____ part of the vegetable and can be cooked like any other dark leafy green.

- A. traditional B. careful C. colourful D. nutritious

3. It is boring here. _____ ever happens in this place.

- A. Anything B. Something C. Things D. Nothing

4. Moderation doesn't mean _____ the foods you love.

- A. to prevent B. preventing C. to eliminate D. eliminating

5. You should eat more fruits and vegetables if you _____ to lose weight.

- A. would want B. wanted C. will want D. want

6. When we were on holiday, we spend too _____ money.

- A. a lot of B. many C. much D. lots of

7. If people work so much, they _____ depressed and eat more.

- A. may feel B. may have felt C. felt D. had felt

8. Studies suggest _____ only when you are most active and giving your digestive system a long break each day.

- A. eating B. being eating C. to eat D. being eaten

9. Despite the differences in cuisine of each region, there are similarities, such as the _____ for main meals – rice, ways of adding fish sauce, herbs and other flavors.
A. foundation B. necessity C. staple D. basic
10. Perhaps the three most popular ice cream _____ are vanilla, chocolate and strawberry.
A. offers B. flavours C. brands D. ingredients
11. I spend _____ my spare time gardening.
A. most B. the most of C. most of D. most of the
12. Your body uses calcium to build healthy bones and teeth, _____ them strong as you age.
A. continue B. keep C. remain D. care
13. Food in Northern Vietnam is not as _____ as that in Central and Southern Viet Nam, as black pepper is often used rather than chilies.
A. spicy B. exciting C. strong D. flavour
14. Pumpkin soup is a good source of _____ minerals and vitamins, especially vitamin A.
A. fibers B. fats C. sugars D. solids
15. There's _____ use in complaining. They probably won't do anything about it.
A. a few B. a little C. no D. some
16. If you eat too quickly, you may not _____ attention to whether your hunger is satisfied.
A. keep B. show C. pay D. take
17. Another feature in northern cuisine is in winter all family members gather around a big hotpot _____ there is a combination of seasoned broth, vegetables and meats.
A. what B. where C. which D. in which
18. You _____ chicken. You cook it in an oven or over a fire without liquid.
A. fry B. roast C. steam D. boil
19. _____ cups of coffee have you taken?
A. How many B. How much C. How D. How far
20. Common eating habits that can lead to _____ are: eating too fast, eating when not hungry, eating while standing up, and skipping meals.
A. put on weight B. be heavy C. gain weight D. weight gain

V. Identify the one underlined word or phrase that must be changed to make the sentence correct.

1. If someone came into the store, smile and say, "May I help you?"
A B C D
2. If you try these cosmetics, you look five years younger.
A B C D
3. If you do not understand what were written in the book, you could ask Mr. Pike.
A B C D
4. I will come to meet Mr. Pike and tell him about your problems if you didn't solve them yourself.
A B C D

5. Sam will not graduate unless he doesn't pass all the tests.

A B C D

6. If there isn't enough food, we couldn't continue our journey.

A B C D

7. Unless you pour oil on water, it will float.

A B C D

8. You have to take a taxi home if you want to leave now.

A B C D

9. If anyone will phone, tell them I'll be back at 11:00.

A B C D

10. We can hire a minibus if there will be enough people.

A B C D

C. READING

I. Fill each of the numbered blanks in the following passage. Use only one word in each space.

Aboriginal	barbecues	recipes	cookery	espresso
food	bush	meat	cooking	emu

Australia is a huge country and it has a lot of different kinds of (1)_____. In the past, the Aboriginal people of Australia ate animals like crocodiles and some insects like the witchetty grub. Aboriginal Australians travelled around the Australian countryside, or 'bush', to find food.

When the first British and Irish people moved to Australia in the 1830s, they brought sheep and cows from Europe. They also brought traditional English and Irish recipes. Many of these (2)_____, like fish and chips and (3)_____ pies, are still popular today. They also created new Australian recipes such as the pavlova (a fruit dessert - named after a Russian dancer) and damper (a bread cooked in the bush).

After 1945, a lot of people came to live in Australia from countries like Italy, Germany, Greece, Thailand and India. They brought recipes with them and Australians began to eat and drink different things. People started to drink (4)_____ coffee and eat Mediterranean and Asian food.

A lot of modern Australians love (5)_____ with fresh food. They often cook food on (6)_____ in their gardens or on the beach. Today more people also eat (7)_____ food like kangaroo and (8)_____. Mark Olive, an Aboriginal chef, has a popular TV (9)_____ programme about traditional; (10)_____ food. There are always new recipes to try in Australia!

II. Choose the word or phrase among A, B, c or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

Humans have a long history of eating insects, and it turns out that they can be a very (1)_____ part of a person's regular (2)_____. Insects have a lot of protein, and they are often easier to catch than (3)_____ animals. Therefore, it is no wonder that

when our ancient (4)_____ saw some tasty worms or grubs wiggling on the ground, they made a quick snack of them.

In Thailand, insects are a regular part of the street food that can be found. The different (5)_____ that people snack on are crickets, grasshoppers, giant water bugs, and assorted worms. They are often deep-fried and salted, so they have a crunchy texture that makes them a perfect snack food. If you can get past the (6)_____ that you are eating a cricket, it will crunch in your mouth just like a corn chip!

For a lot of people, however, it is difficult to get (7)_____ the fear of eating insects. People tend to see insects as invaders, especially when they are crawling on the food that we are about to eat. (8)_____ being able to eat insects (9)_____ feeling disgusted is cultural. Some people cannot eat French cheese or stinky tofu because they weren't brought up doing so. To many of us, insects fall right into that category, making it difficult to even try them.

If (10)_____ the chance, though, be courageous, insects can be nutritious and tasty, so long as you can get over the "yuck" factor.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|---------------|---------------|-----------------|
| 1. A. nutrition | B. nutritious | C. nutritions | D. nutritiously |
| 2. A. health | B. fitness | C. diet | D. balance |
| 3. A. prey | B. pray | C. eat | D. digest |
| 4. A. acquaints | B. relatives | C. ancestors | D. offspring |
| 5. A. insects | B. animals | C. herbs | D. cattle |
| 6. A. true | B. exact | C. fact | D. reality |
| 7. A. up | B. over | C. down | D. on |
| 8. A. However | B. Although | C. Meanwhile | D. Therefore |
| 9. A. without | B. in | C. far | D. on |
| 10. A. giving | B. gives | C. gave | D. given |

III. Fill in the blank with a suitable word.

Isn't it amazing how much time we spend (1)_____ about food? "Have you ever eaten ...?" "What did you have for lunch?" and so on. And when you travel from one country to another, you find that people have quite different (2)_____ about food. People often feel that what they eat is normal, and that what other people eat is strange or silly.

In most parts of Asia, for example, no (3)_____ is complete without rice. In England, people (4)_____ potatoes every day. In the Middle East, bread is the main part of every meal. Eating, like so many things we do, becomes a (5)_____ which is difficult to change. Americans like to drink a lot of orange juice and coffee. The English (6)_____ tea four or five times every day. Australians drink large amount of beer and the French drink (7)_____ every day.

The sort of meat people like to eat also differs from one country to another. Horse (8)_____ is thought to be delicious in France. In Hong Kong, some people enjoy eating snakes. New Zealanders eat sheep, but they never eat goat meat. The Japanese don't like to eat sheep meat because of its smell, but they enjoy raw fish.

So it (9)_____ that although eating is a topic that we can talk about for hours, there is very little (10)_____ sense in what we say about it. People everywhere enjoy eating what they have always been eating, and there is very little we can do to change our eating habits.

D. WRITING

I. Complete the second sentence in each pair so that it has similar meaning to the first sentence, using “you”.

1. Vegetarians don't eat meat.

=> If you're a vegetarian, _____

2. People who live in a cold country don't like hot weather.

=> If you live _____

3. Teachers have to work very hard.

=> If you're a teacher, _____

4. People who do a lot of exercise stay fit and healthy.

=> If you _____

5. Mechanics understand engines.

=> If you're a _____

6. People who read newspapers know what's happening in the world.

=> If you _____

II. Complete the second sentence in each pair so that it has similar meaning to the first sentence.

1. Eating healthy foods is very important.

=> It is _____

2. I suggest having spaghetti and pizza tonight.

=> Let's _____

3. You need to peel the onion and slice it.

=> The onion _____

4. Follow these safety instructions or you may get burnt.

=> If you _____

5. My aunt has never tasted sushi before.

=> This is _____

PART 3: TEST YOURSELF

I. Choose a word in each line that has different stress pattern.

1. A. ingredient

B. cucumber

C. particular

D. analysis

2. A. understand

B. librarian

C. experiment

D. historical

3. A. business

B. combine

C. endangered

D. reduce

4. A. accidental

B. outnumber

C. opinion

D. nutritious

5. A. pancake

B. canteen

C. teaspoon

D. cabbage

II. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.

1. A meal of Hue people has a natural combination between flavors and colors of dishes, which creates the unique _____ in the regional cuisine.
A. description B. list C. feature D. part
2. You usually _____ vegetables like onion. It means that you cut them into many small pieces.
A. grate B. sprinkle C. chop D. whisk
3. _____ has left a bicycle outside.
A. Anyone B. Anything C. Someone D. Something
4. Keeping a _____ for a few days will help you discover your bad eating habits.
A. food dairy B. report C. diary D. personal
5. One special feature of cuisine in Southern Vietnam is short cooking time which aims to _____ the freshness of food.
A. remain B. exist C. stay D. continue
6. Is there _____ apple juice in the fridge, Quang?
A. any B. some C. an D. a
7. _____ don't visit this part of the town.
A. The most tourists B. Most of tourists
C. Most tourists D. Most the tourists
8. You may have had certain eating habits for so long that you do not _____ they are unhealthy.
A. understand B. tell C. recognize D. realize
9. If children don't play sports, they _____ sleepy and tired.
A. would have felt B. had felt C. would feel D. will feel
10. If I feel hungry in the afternoon, I _____ snacks like fresh carrots.
A. had had B. might have C. would have D. had
11. Can I have a pizza, a dozen eggs and a _____ of lemonade, please?
A. piece B. tub C. bottle D. jar
12. I think that _____ lemon juice on fish makes it taste better.
A. few B. a few C. little D. a little
13. If parents don't cook at home, their children _____ more fast food.
A. may have B. had had C. have D. would have
14. If my mother goes home late this evening, my father _____.
A. had cooked B. has cooked C. will cook D. would cook
15. I would like a _____ of broccoli and two carrots.
A. slice B. head C. bunch D. clove
16. We couldn't buy anything because _____ of the shops were open.
A. all B. half C. most D. none
17. If you eat a lot of fruit, you _____ health problems.
A. had B. will never have C. have D. may have

18. Such _____ as sugar, sugarcane, and coconut water are mostly used in Southern Vietnamese food than in Northern and Central Viet Nam.

- A. ingredients B. menus C. dishes D. courses

19. I didn't eat everything that they _____ me at the party.

- A. served B. shared C. cooked D. baked

20. The village is very small. There are _____ houses.

- A. a few B. only a few C. some D. only a little

III. Choose the word in the box to complete the text.

sophisticatedly	livestock	ingredients	characterized cuisine
influence	shrimps	dishes	flavors
			varies

Vietnamese food culture (1)_____ by regions from the north to the south. In Northern Viet Nam, Vietnamese food is (2)_____ by light and balanced flavours with the combination of many (3)_____. Northerners have been using many kinds of meats like pork, beef, and chicken to cook; besides, some kinds of freshwater fish, crustaceans, and other mollusks like (4)_____, crabs, and oysters, etc. Many famous dishes of Viet Nam are cooked with these ingredients such as Bun Rieu, Pho, Bun Thang, Bun Cha, Banh Cuon, etc.

Then food culture in Central and Southern Viet Nam has developed suitable (5)_____ in each region. In Central Viet Nam, the regional cuisine of Central Viet Nam is famous for its spicy food, which differs from two other parts with mostly non-spicy food. Hue cuisine is typical Central Viet Nam's food culture. (6)_____ of Hue cuisine are decorative and colorful, which expresses the influence of the Vietnamese royal (7)_____ in the feudal period. Food in the region is often decorated (8)_____ and used with chili peppers and shrimp sauces, namely, Bun Bo Hue, Banh xeo, or Banh beo, etc.

In Southern Viet Nam, the region is characterized by warm weather and fertile soil, which creates favorable conditions for planting a variety of fruit, vegetables and (9)_____. Thus, food in the region is often added with garlic, shallots and fresh herbs. Particularly, Southerners are favored of sugar; they add sugar in most dishes. Here, there is also an (10)_____ of western and Asian cuisines on southern food, such as influences from China, India, France, and Thailand.

IV. Fill in the blank with a suitable word.

Many health (1)_____ believe that children and young people today are more (2)_____ than they used to be. So why has this happened?

One reason is bad eating habits. (3)_____ of young people don't have a healthy diet. They eat too much fast food (4)_____ hamburgers and pizza and not enough fruit and vegetables. In the US, many children have been eating fast food (5)_____ since they were very young. In fact, almost one-third of American children aged four to nineteen have been eating fast food (6)_____ all the time. They also don't (7)_____ exercise and spend too (8)_____ of their time watching TV, surfing the Internet or playing computer games.

So how can you change your habits if you have been following an unhealthy lifestyle for a long time? First, change your (9)_____ and eat more fruit and vegetables. Next, find an activity you enjoy. Why not try something different like rock climbing, surfing or hiking? Many young people have found that (10)_____ fit and healthy can be a lot of fun.

V. Complete the sentences with *a, an, some or any*.

1. I don't have _____ paper.
2. Is there _____ petrol in the car?
3. I buy _____ fruits, but I don't have _____ vegetables.
4. Do you have _____ stamps? I need two.
5. I need _____ butter to make a cake.
6. I don't have _____ free time today. Sorry.
7. Are there _____ potatoes in the basket?
8. There is _____ ink-pot on the table.
9. Can I have _____ glass of milk?
10. Thank you. And _____ box of chocolates would be fine.

VI. Fill in the blanks with: *much/ many/ few/ little/ most*.

1. She isn't very popular. She has _____ friends.
2. Ann is very busy these days. She has _____ free time.
3. Did you take _____ photographs when you were on holiday?
4. I'm not very busy today. I haven't got _____ to do.
5. This is very modern city. There are _____ old buildings.
6. The weather has been very dry recently. We've had _____ rain.
7. _____ English learners is becoming greater and greater.
8. _____ people have applied for the job.
9. Did it cost _____ to repair the car?
10. _____ of my friends live in HCM city.

VII. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tenses of the conditionals.

1. If we **(take)** _____, the children **(not go)** _____ for a walk.
2. If she **(not read)** _____ the novel, she **(not pass)** _____ the literature test.
3. If I **(not argue)** _____ with my friend, he **(lend)** _____ me his motorbike.
4. If we **(take)** _____ the bus, we **(not arrive)** _____ in time.
5. If Dick **(not buy)** _____ the book, his friends **(be)** _____ angry with him.
6. If Tom **(not tidy up)** _____ his room, Victoria **(not help)** _____ him with the muffins.
7. If the boys **(not play)** _____ football, the girls **(not come)** _____ to the football pitch.
8. If you **(eat)** _____ too much junk food, you **(not lose)** _____ weight.
9. If I **(not make)** _____ breakfast tomorrow morning, my girlfriend **(not love)** _____ me anymore.
10. If they **(not hurry)** _____, they **(not catch)** _____ the train.

VIII. Write one word in each gap to complete the sentences.

1. Most people seem to be _____ of the harmful effects of their diet.
2. Everyone complemented her _____ the wonderful buffet she'd laid on.
3. The problem with drinks like that is they're full _____ sugar.
4. The snack choice was _____ fruit salad or chocolate cake.
5. I'm going to tell you what your supper is. You'll just have to wait _____ see.
6. She's generally regarded _____ being the best cookery book writer of her generation.
7. Most people associate English food _____ fish and chips and shepherd's pie.
8. Karen's very careful _____ how much the salt she has.
9. There's a lack _____ good restaurants round here.
10. The meat was well cooked, but the sauce was totally lacking _____ flavor.

Unit
8

TOURISM

PART 1: GRAMMAR REVIEW

I. INDEFINITE ARTICLES: A/ AN

- **An** đứng trước 1 danh từ đếm được số ít bắt đầu bằng 1 nguyên âm (u, e, o, a, i).
- **A** đứng trước danh từ đếm được số ít bắt đầu bằng 1 phụ âm.

1. A/ An được dùng trước:

- Danh từ đếm được, số ít. *An: đứng trước nguyên âm hoặc “h” câm.	Ex: a doctor, a bag, an animal, an hour..... Ex: an animal, an hour.....
- Trong các cấu trúc: so + adj + a/an + noun such + a/an + noun as + adj + a/an + noun + as How + adj + a/an + noun + verb!	Ex: - It's such a beautiful picture. - She is as pretty a girl as her sister. - How beautiful a girl you are!
- Chỉ một người được đề cập qua tên.	Ex: A Mrs. Blue sent you this letter.
- Trước các danh từ trong ngữ đồng vị.	Ex: Nguyen Du, a great poet, wrote that novel.
- Trong các cụm từ chỉ số lượng.	Ex: a pair, a couple, a lot of, a little, a few, a large/great number of.....

2. A/ An không được dùng:

- ONE được sử dụng thay A/An để nhấn mạnh.	Ex: There is a book on the table, but one is not enough.
- Trước danh từ không đếm được.	Ex: Coffee is also a kind of drink.
- Trước các danh từ đếm được số nhiều.	Ex: Dogs are faithful animals.

II. DEFINITE ARTICLE: THE

1. THE được dùng trước:

- Những vật duy nhất	Ex: the sun, the moon, the world....
- Các danh từ được xác nhận bởi cụm tính từ hoặc mệnh đề tính từ	- The house <u>with green fence</u> is hers. - The man <u>that we met</u> has just come.
- Các danh từ được xác định qua ngữ cảnh hoặc được đề cập trước đó	Ex: Finally, the writer killed himself. - I have a book and an eraser. The book is now on the table.
- Các danh từ chỉ sự giải trí ...	Ex: the theater, the concert

- Trước tên các tàu thuyền, máy bay	Ex: The Titanic was a great ship.
- Các sông, biển, đại dương, dãy núi	Ex: the Mekong River, the Pacific Ocean, the Himalayas
- Một nhóm các đảo hoặc quốc gia	Ex: the Philippines, the United States
- Tính từ dùng như danh từ tập hợp	Ex: You should help the poor.
- Trong so sánh nhất	Ex: Nam is the cleverest in his class.
- Tên người ở số nhiều (chỉ gia đình)	Ex: The Blacks, The Blues, the Nams
- Các danh từ đại diện cho 1 loài	Ex: The cat is a lovely home pet.
- Các hạn từ chỉ thời gian, nơi chốn	Ex: in the morning, in the street, in the water ..
- Số thứ tự	Ex: the first, the second, the third....
- Chuỗi thời gian hoặc không gian	Ex: the next, the following, the last...

2. THE không dùng được

- Trước các danh từ số nhiều nói chung	Ex: They build houses near the hall.
- Danh từ trừu tượng, không đếm được	Ex: Independence is a happy thing.
- Các danh từ chỉ màu sắc	Ex: Red and white make pink.
- Các môn học	Ex: Math is her worst subject.
- Các vật liệu, kim loại	Ex: Steel is made from iron .
- Các tên nước, châu lục, thành phố	Ex: Ha Noi is the capital of VietNam .
- Các chức danh, tên người	Ex: President Bill Clinton, Ba, Nga
- Các bữa ăn, món ăn, thức ăn	Ex: We have rice and fish for dinner .
- Các trò chơi, thể thao	Ex: Football is a popular sport in VN.
- Các loại bệnh tật	Ex: Cold is a common disease.
- Ngôn ngữ, tiếng nói	Ex: English is being used everywhere.
- Các kỳ nghỉ, lễ hội	Ex: Tet, Christmas, Valentine...
- Các mũi đất (nhô ra biển, hồ, núi)	Ex: Cape Horn, Lake Than Tho, Mount Cam, Mount Rushmore.... *But: the Cape of Good Hope, the Great Lake, the Mount of Olive....

PART 2: PRACTICE

A. PHONETICS AND PHONOLOGY

I. Find the word which has a different sound in the underlined part.

1. A. magnificent B. delay C. bank D. travel
2. A. checkout B. erode C. exotic D. decision
3. A. reasonable B. resort C. season D. excursion
4. A. safari B. stalagmite C. lag D. pakage
5. A. explore B. environment C. resort D. expedition

II. Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.

1. A. safari B. breathtaking C. traveller D. sightseeing
2. A. vacation B. delicious C. excursion D. holiday
3. A. original B. stimulating C. imperial D. geography
4. A. magnificence B. destination C. affordable D. accessible
5. A. habitat B. addition C. fantastic D. discover

B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

I. Fill in each blank in the sentences with the correct word from the box. Some words can be used more than once.

tour	voyage	flight	
trip	travel	journey	cruise

1. For general advice about _____, go to a travel agent.
2. One day I would like to do the _____ by train and ship across Russia to Japan.
3. We are going on a _____ of Europe, visiting 11 countries in five weeks.
4. We went on a three-week _____ round the Mediterranean. The ship stopped at Venice, Athens, Istanbul and Alexandria.
5. He once went by ship to Australia. The _____ took 4 weeks.
6. My father is going on a business _____ to Ha Noi next week.
7. Vietnam Airlines _____ VN507 from Ha Noi to Tokyo will be taking off in ten minutes.
8. The _____ from Heathrow Airport to the centre of London takes about 45 minutes by underground.
9. On our first day in New York we went on a three-hour _____ of the city by bus.
10. During our stay in London we went on a day _____ to Oxford and another to Windsor.

II. Complete the sentences with *a*, *an*, *the*, or *zero article* (Ø).

1. John and Mary went to _____ school yesterday and then studied in _____ library before returning home.

2. _____ Lake Erie is one of _____ five great Lakes in _____ North America.
3. On our trip to _____ Spain, we crossed _____ Atlantic Ocean.
4. _____ Mount Rushmore is the site of _____ magnificent tribute to _____ four great American presidents.
5. What did you eat for _____ breakfast this morning?
6. David played _____ basketball and _____ baseball at _____ Boy's club this year.
7. Rita plays _____ violin and her sister plays _____ guitar.
8. While we were in _____ Alaska, we saw _____ Eskimo village.
9. Ton can't go to _____ movies tonight because he has to write _____ essay.
10. David attended _____ Princeton University.

III. Choose the correct answers A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.

1. What do you think of _____ public transport in _____ Ha Noi?
A. Ø – Ø B. a – a C. a – Ø D. the – Ø
2. Parking is very difficult in _____ city centre, so my father always goes there by _____ bus.
A. the – Ø B. the – the C. a – a D. a – Ø
3. Secondary schools offer a wide _____ of subjects.
A. field B. scope C. list D. range
4. If you don't know the language, you may have to use _____ language.
A. hand B. gesture C. head D. signal
5. The government has recently _____ the buildings in the old section of the city.
A. reformed B. adjusted C. restored D. modified
6. When she came _____, she found herself in hospital.
A. round B. off C. over D. out
7. You'll have to go for an interview tomorrow, but don't worry. It's just a _____.
A. form B. format C. formation D. formality
8. Since the _____ of the motor car, road accidents have increased dramatically.
A. approach B. inauguration C. initiation D. advert
9. I must have browsed through hundreds of _____, but I have no idea where to go for this year holiday.
A. booklets B. yellow pages C. brochures D. propaganda
10. It's possible to supplement one's _____ by taking a part-time job.
A. income B. earning C. gaining D. attainment
11. I was _____ in the book I was reading and didn't hear the phone.
A. engrossed B. submerged C. gripped D. distracted
12. He couldn't _____ his father that he was telling the truth.
A. admit B. confide C. trust D. convince
13. It was difficult to guess what her _____ to the news would be.
A. feelings B. reaction C. capital D. opinion

14. Eight o'clock is _____ good time to phone Nick: he's always at home in _____ evening.

- A. Ø – the B. a – the C. a - Ø D. a – an

15. Does it take _____ long time to get to _____ city centre?

- A. Ø – the B. a – a C. a – the D. the – the

C. READING

I. Read the following passage and choose the best option for each numbered blank.

The Maldives are a group of very small islands in the Indian Ocean, near Sri Lanka. It has the smallest (1)_____ of any Asian countries. There are about 1200 islands and there are people living on 200 of them. About 400,000 people live in the Maldives and 75,000 of them are (2)_____ the capital island, Mai... Mai... is different from the other islands in the Maldives because it doesn't have any beaches. In fact, there is a small wall (3)_____ goes around the whole island.

It is very easy to get around the islands. When you (4)_____ on the airport island, you can take a *dhoni* and go to Mai... This is a small boat used for (5)_____ around the islands. *Dhoni* taxis go from the airport island to the capital island every fifteen minutes and (6)_____ midnight every half an hour. You can use these boats to visit other islands, too.

The Maldives are a popular place for scuba diving (7)_____ there are many wonderful fish in the water to see. Also, the water is very clear so when you are (8)_____ you can see for more than 50 metres! There are many professional diving schools with instructors. They speak many languages, so you can (9)_____ someone to help you. Of course, that's not all you can do on these beautiful islands. You can go (10)_____ whale and dolphin, fishing, surfing, snorkeling, hiking or explore the towns.

- | | | | |
|------------------|----------------|-------------------|----------------|
| 1. A. population | B. nation | C. area | D. inhabitant |
| 2. A. in | B. on | C. above | D. at |
| 3. A. who | B. where | C. it | D. that |
| 4. A. depart | B. travel | C. arrive | D. leave |
| 5. A. education | B. production | C. transportation | D. translation |
| 6. A. at | B. after | C. on | D. before |
| 7. A. although | B. furthermore | C. however | D. because |
| 8. A. undersea | B. underlevel | C. underwater | D. Underneath |
| 9. A. find | B. see | C. look | D. hold |
| 10. A. playing | B. watching | C. hearing | D. catching |

II. Read the following passage and fill in the blanks with the suitable words in the box.

Trawl and tourism are very (1)_____ to millions of people over the world. In every country you (2)_____ find people that work in travel and tourism. Some countries need the money (3)_____ tourism to help their people survive. It is (4)_____ for these places that travel and tourism continue to expand and bring money to their regions.

However, travel and tourism have negative (5)_____. Planes, buses, boats and other means of (6)_____ that carry travellers and tourist cause pollution. Moreover, some

people do things on a holiday they would never think (7)_____ doing at home. For example, many travellers use a lot of water and electricity when they stay in hotels.

They forget to turn off the (8)_____ or even leave televisions and air conditioning units on when they leave the room. On top of that, it is often difficult or impossible (9)_____ travellers to recycle items, so they end up leaving large amounts of waste behind. That's (10)_____ it is important for people to travel wisely and respect the places they visit.

III. Read the passage and answer the questions.

In 1761, an artificial waterway opened. It joined a coal-mining area with the port of Manchester. This was England's first man-made waterway, or 'canal'. Soon the price of coal in this part of the country went down, and the owner of the Bridgewater canal became rich.

In the late 18th century landowners and businessmen built many new canals to make money. There was no canal plan for the country, but the canals completely changed the transport of heavy goods in England. Prices of factory goods went down because transport cost less than before. One horse could now pull 50 tons on a canal boat. Before, it could pull less than one ton on a road cart. The canal network was a very important part of the Industrial Revolution in Britain, but canals had only a short life. In the mid 19th century, the new railways became the most modern form of transport.

The men who built the canals were called 'navvies'. They moved around country in groups from canal to canal. Ordinary people did not like the navvies, because they wore strange clothes, had no real homes, and because they often drank too much beer.

The Nottingham and Beeston Canal had two parts. It opened in 1796 and was an important six-mile link in the Trent Navigation - a system of canals and rivers which joined the Midlands with the River Humber and the port of Hull. This carried goods from inland factories to the sea. Now it is no longer a working canal. It is a place for people who like walking or fishing.

1. Why did the price of coal round Manchester decrease?

2. Why didn't people like the canal builders?

3. What did the boats on this canal carry?

4. Why was the waterway from Midland to Hull important?

5. Why did the network of canals become less important in a short time?

D. WRITING

I. Combine two sentences into one, using the connectives from the list: *and, but, because, so, therefore, or, moreover, however, if, when, unless*.

1. You can't borrow my dictionary. You bring it back on Monday.

2. The cost of installation is very high. Solar domestic heating systems are economical to use.

3. Solar panels are placed on the roof of a house. The Sun's energy is used to heat water.

4. I don't agree with a lot of his teaching methods. He is a good teacher.

5. We'd better not waste water. We won't have enough to drink sooner or later.

6. The house is quite beautiful. The cost is not too high.

7. Do you want to study more? Do you want to look for a job?

8. You can go home. You've finished this exercise.

9. I don't get many opportunities to practise my English. I find it difficult to remember everything I study.

10. I'm practising speaking English a lot. I don't want to fail in the oral test.

II. Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means exactly the same as the sentence printed before it.

1. I am terribly sorry, I thought you were a friend of Anna's.
I took
2. Although she was busy, she managed to find the time to proofread for me.
Busy
3. I would prefer you do computer science.
I'd rather
4. He didn't get his visa until last Monday.
It was
5. They continued to say that I was to blame.
They persisted
6. Vietnamese coffee is considered to be one of the best in the world.
Vietnamese coffee
7. If you asked me well in advance, I'll be willing to work overtime.
Provided you
8. She listens more sympathetically than anyone else I know.
She is a
9. This is the best essay I have ever written.
Never

10. I assumed that she would learn how to take shorthand after this course.

I took it

III. Use the words or phrases given to write meaningful sentences.

1. Tourism development/ lead/ soil erosion/ pollution/ waste.

2. Tourism/ contribute/ increasing carbon footprint/ stress/ ecosystems.

3. The infrastructure/ tourist spot/ not/ satisfy/ great demand/ during/ peak season.

4. Tourists/ cause/ significant effect/ local habitats/ especially/ country.

5. Tourists/ be aware/ damage/ they/ cause/ and/ tourism authorities/ take measures/ solve/ problems.

6. First/ tourism/ create/ jobs/ tourism industry/ and/ other sectors/ such/ retail and transportation.

7. However/ jobs/ created/ tourism/ often seasonal/ and/ poorly paid.

8. Second/ tourism/ encourage/ preservation/ traditional customs/ handicrafts/ festivals/ but/ interaction/ tourists/ also lead/ erosion/ traditional cultures/ values.

9. Finally/ ecotourism/ help/ conservation/ wildlife/ generating funds/ maintaining national park.

10. Nevertheless/ it/ also cause/ pollution/ through traffic emissions/ littering/ noise.

PART 3: TEST YOURSELF

I. Find the word which has a different sound in the underlined part.

- | | | | |
|--------------------------|---------------------|-----------------------|--------------------|
| 1. A. <u>h</u> ost | B. <u>h</u> onor | C. <u>h</u> ockey | D. <u>h</u> orror |
| 2. A. ba <u>d</u> minton | B. swa <u>l</u> low | C. cha <u>l</u> lenge | D. ba <u>l</u> let |

- | | | | |
|-------------------------|-------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| 3. A. <u>teammate</u> | B. <u>reading</u> | C. <u>creating</u> | D. <u>seaside</u> |
| 4. A. <u>athlete</u> | B. <u>author</u> | C. <u>length</u> | D. <u>southern</u> |
| 5. A. <u>touch</u> | B. <u>foul</u> | C. <u>account</u> | D. <u>mount</u> |
| 6. A. <u>lose</u> | B. <u>vote</u> | C. <u>control</u> | D. <u>social</u> |
| 7. A. <u>rear</u> | B. <u>bear</u> | C. <u>gear</u> | D. <u>year</u> |
| 8. A. <u>please</u> | B. <u>peace</u> | C. <u>seat</u> | D. <u>spread</u> |
| 9. A. <u>deny</u> | B. <u>emotion</u> | C. <u>respect</u> | D. <u>better</u> |
| 10. A. <u>overlooks</u> | B. <u>beliefs</u> | C. <u>towards</u> | D. <u>rights</u> |

II. Complete the sentences with *a*, *an*, *the*, or *zero* article (Ø).

- Harry has been admitted to _____ School of Medicine at _____ mid western university.
- Mel's grandmother is in _____ hospital, so we went to visit her _____ last night.
- _____ political science class is taking _____ trip to _____ France in _____ Spring.
- _____ Queen Elizabeth II is _____ monarch of _____ Great Britain.
- Scientists sent _____ expedition to _____ Mars during _____ 1990s.
- Last night there was _____ bird singing outside my house.
- _____ chair that you are sitting in is broken.
- _____ Civil War was fought in _____ United States between 1861 and 1865.
- _____ Florida State University is smaller than _____ University of Florida.
- There was _____ knock on _____ door, I opened it and found _____ small dark man in _____ blue overcoat and _____ woolen cap.

III. Choose the underlined word or phrase (A, B, C or D) that needs correcting.

- If a drop of oil is placed in a glass of water, it would float to the top.
A B C D
- The Tuoi Tre is a daily newspaper that is wide read by both teenagers and adults.
A B C D
- My parents wouldn't let me staving up late when I was a child.
A B C D
- Her children are used to picking up after school every day. They don't have to walk home.
A B C D
- I'm usually right about the weather, amn't I?
A B C D
- Could I change seats with you? I'd like sitting next to my friends.
A B C D
- Watch television to the exclusion of all other activities is not a healthy habit for a growing child.
A B C D
- Hans is only fourteen, but he seems enough old to stay out until ten.
A B C D

9. I think that's an interesting thought, isn't that?

A B C D

10. Greeting enough sleep is important in order not fall asleep is class.

A B C D

IV. Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

MY EXPERIENCE ON AN ELEPHANT SAFARI

We went on an elephant safari at a place (1)_____ Camp Jabulani in South Africa. They take visitors on safaris twice a day: once in the morning and once at night. Guests can go on as many rides as they like, but they don't (2)_____ you ride an elephant if you are younger than twelve years old. Luckily, I'm fifteen! On our first safari, I felt really scared. I remember thinking we could have gone on a beach holiday instead! As I was climbing onto the elephant, I wondered how I was going to control (3)_____ a big animal. I soon (4)_____ that I ought not to have worried so much. They made you sit with an experienced elephant trainer. You can't ride (5)_____ your own. During the trek, we saw giraffes, zebras, lions, and rhinos. My parents took a lot of photos. I would have taken photos myself but I'd (6)_____ my camera in my room. I can't remember exactly how long the safaris lasted, but it must have been a couple of hours because we got (7)_____ just (8)_____ for lunch. We stayed at Camp Jubalani for three days and went on four elephant safaris. We could have gone on more than that, but on one of the days my mum wasn't very well. Anyway, it was a (9)_____ holiday. I'd definitely (10)_____ an elephant safari.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|--------------|---------------|--------------|
| 1. A. called | B. is called | C. call | D. calling |
| 2. A. want | B. make | C. let | D. allow |
| 3. A. so | B. what | C. that | D. such |
| 4. A. decided | B. realized | C. recognized | D. looked |
| 5. A. on | B. by | C. with | D. for |
| 6. A. taken | B. brought | C. put | D. left |
| 7. A. off | B. back | C. up | D. in |
| 8. A. at times | B. late | C. in time | D. on time |
| 9. A. fantastic | B. welcoming | C. pleased | D. delicious |
| 10. A. demand | B. recommend | C. suggest | D. offer |

V. Read the passage, and choose the correct answer A, B, C or D.

Fabrizio from Venice: Of course, there's a lot to see in Venice. It's one of the most famous cities in the world. First of all, there are the canals. We don't have cars in Venice so you have to travel everywhere by canal. The most famous place in Venice is the square. St. Mark's Square with St. Mark's Cathedral. And there are lots of museums and palaces, and beautiful bridges, too.

Yumi from Kyoto: For me, Kyoto is the most beautiful city in Japan. It's also the oldest city. It has many old traditional buildings, and beautiful palaces, temples and gardens. The most famous temple is the Golden Pavilion. There are also very good markets, and also really good shops, and some beautiful modern buildings, too.

Murat from Istanbul: I think Istanbul is maybe the most beautiful city in the world, but of course I come from Istanbul! The city is built on hills around the Bosphoros, and so there are

beautiful views across the water. From the water, you can see mosques – the most famous is called the Blue Mosque – and palaces and bridges. Istanbul also has a very famous market called the Grand Bazaar. But these days we also have many modern shopping centres and modern buildings and hotels. It's really a fantastic city.

Claudia from Rio de Janeiro: Rio is one of the most exciting cities in South America ... first of course we have our famous beach, the Copacabana, and there are many mountains around Rio – the most famous is the Sugar Plum Mountain where you can see a big statue of Christ, and of course we have our famous stadium ... the Macarana stadium, maybe the most famous football stadium in the world ... it's really a great place.

Marina from St. Petersburg: You'll really love St. Petersburg because there are so many things to see. The most famous is the Winter Palace, where the Tsars lived, and the Hermitage Museum which is a fantastic art gallery, and we have a very beautiful river too, the River Neva, and of course churches and cathedrals. There is so much to see!

1. The place(s) that Fabrizio recommends coming to in Venice must be _____.
A. the square B. the museums C. the canals D. beautiful bridges
2. All of the following are true about Kyoto EXCEPT that _____.
A. it is the most beautiful city in Japan
B. it has very good markets and shops
C. the Golden Pavilion is very famous
D. it only has old traditional buildings
3. The most spectacular views of Istanbul are _____.
A. the Bosphoros
B. the mosques across the water
C. the Grand Bazaar on the Bosphoros
D. modern shopping centres and buildings
4. We can infer from Claudia's words that people in Rio _____.
A. are very religious
B. love architecture
C. love football very much
D. built the statue of Christ on the Copacabana
5. People who would probably want to visit St. Petersburg most are _____.
A. sports enthusiasts B. art lovers
C. politicians D. ballet dancers

VI. Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

When visitors join in a (1)_____ of the Mekong Delta, they can visit Cai Rang Floating Market to see the river life. Cai Rang Floating Market is (2)_____ all day but it is busiest from sunrise to about 9 a.m. The main items (3)_____ there are farm produce and specialties of neighboring areas.

During the early morning market hours, larger sized boats anchor and create lanes so that (4)_____ boats can move into and out of. The waterway becomes a maze of hundreds of boats packed with mango, bananas, papaya, pineapple, and other goods. Sellers do not have (5)

_____ their goods because their goods can be seen (6)_____ and their cries would not be heard in the vastness of the river and the noise of boat engines. Sellers tie their goods to a tall pole (7)_____ buyers can see from a distance (8)_____ they are selling. Each boat is loaded with plenty of seasonal goods. Activities at the market are also a(n) (9)_____ for tourists to study the cultural (10)_____ of southerners.

- | | | | |
|-----------------------|------------------|--------------------|---------------------|
| 1. A. travel | B. trip | C. voyage | D. tour |
| 2. A. open | B. to open | C. opened | D. opening |
| 3. A. sell | B. sold | C. selling | D. are selling |
| 4. A. no | B. bigger | C. the same | D. smaller |
| 5. A. cry out | B. cry | C. cry out for | D. advertise |
| 6. A. within distance | B. in a distance | C. in the distance | D. by some distance |
| 7. A. so that | B. but | C. therefore | D. although |
| 8. A. how far | B. why | C. what | D. how |
| 9. A. experience | B. event | C. reason | D. occasion |
| 10. A. aspects | B. appearances | C. guides | D. subjects |

VII. Read the passage carefully, then decide whether the following statements are true (T) or false (F)

Canada is the world's second largest country. Its population is not very large, however. About 25 million people live in Canada – less than half the population of Britain or France and only one thirtieth of the population of India. Canada is in North America and its capital is Ottawa. It is a rich country with a lot of natural resources. In southern Canada the land is very good for farming and Canada exports a lot of wheat. In the north there are magnificent forests. In the west there are some very high mountains called the Rockies. Canada also has many minerals such as petroleum, gas, copper and zinc. Canada was the first settled by French pioneers. In the eighteenth century there were wars between Britain and French, Canada came under British rule. Since 1931 Canada has been an independent member of the British Commonwealth. English and French are both official language in Canada.

- | | |
|--|-------|
| 1. Canada is a densely populated country. | _____ |
| 2. Canada is a country rich in natural resources. | _____ |
| 3. Canada is the world's leading exporter of wheat. | _____ |
| 4. Canada is a former British colony. | _____ |
| 5. Two official languages spoken in Canada are English and French. | _____ |

VIII. Use the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total).

- Scuba-diving is not really my cup of tea. **INTERESTED**
I _____ scuba-diving.
- No mountains in Western Europe are higher than Mount Blanc. **THE**
Mount Blanc _____ Western Europe.
- They require special permits to access Son Doong Cave. **TO**
Special permits _____ Son Doong Cave.

4. Jane hasn't decided where to go on holiday. **MIND**

Jane hasn't _____ about where to go on holiday.

5. We don't like travelling during peak season. **INTO**

We _____ during peak season.

IX. By using the words in brackets, join each of the following sentences into logical ones. You may need to change some of the words.

1. An area of low pressure forms over the land. The heated air expands and rises. (**as a result**)

2. Canada is similar to the United States. The majority of its people speak English. (**in that**)

3. Governments will most probably not relocate entire cities. They are in earthquake zones. (**just because**)

4. They were forced to buy expensive ones. There were no economy seats available. (**so**)

5. The hypothesis could be tested. Two experiments were conducted. (**so that**)

6. Middle-class families tend to have person-centered structures. Working-class families are usually positional. (**whereas**)

7. Middle-class children do well in most education systems. Working-class children do relatively poorly. (**on the other hand**)

8. Western Europe has large reserves of fuel. The UK has a 250-year supply of coal. (**for instance**)

9. A duck can swim easily and walk on soft ground. It has webbed feet. (**so that**)

10. Far fewer people are killed or injured during train travel. Rail travel is safer than road travel. (**because**)

X. Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means exactly the same as the sentence printed before it.

1. They recruited very few young engineers.

Hardly _____

2. Only two out of the five rooms we have booked have air conditioning.

We have booked five rooms, only _____

3. Jane seems to come to the performance late.

It looks _____

4. I could hold a big party due to Mom's help.

Had it _____

5. Success depends on hard work.

The harder _____

6. Fiona was so disappointed that she could not keep on working.

Such _____

7. Although Richard is competent in his work, he does not know how to deal with this client.

Competent _____

8. It was wrong of you to allow a four-year-old child to walk home alone.

You should _____

9. I could realize how important the family is only after I left home.

Not until _____

10. Mrs. Green is proud of her son's contribution to the play.

Mrs. Green is proud of what _____

Unit
9

ENGLISH IN THE WORLD

PART 1: GRAMMAR REVIEW

I. CONDITIONAL SENTENCE - TYPE 2: PRESENT UNREAL (Diễn tả tình huống không có thật ở hiện tại)

If + S + V (past subjunctive/ simple past), S + would/ could/ might + V.

Ex: I don't win a lot of money, so I can't spend most of it travelling round the world.

→ If I won a lot of money, I could spend most of it travelling round the world.

II. RELATIVE CLAUSES (MỆNH ĐỀ QUAN HỆ)**A. BẢNG TÓM TẮT**

Relative pronoun (Đại từ quan hệ)	Noun replaced (Danh từ được thay thế)	Functions (Chức năng)
Who	Danh từ chỉ người	Làm chủ ngữ
Whom	Danh từ chỉ người	Làm tân ngữ
Which	Danh từ chỉ vật	Làm chủ ngữ hoặc tân ngữ
That	Danh từ chỉ người, vật, thay thế cho “who, whom, which” trong mệnh đề hạn định	Làm chủ ngữ hoặc tân ngữ
Whose	Tính từ sở hữu hoặc sở hữu cách	Làm chủ ngữ hoặc tân ngữ
Where	Danh từ chỉ nơi chốn	Làm tân ngữ
When	Danh từ chỉ thời gian	Làm tân ngữ
Why	Danh từ chỉ lí do	Làm tân ngữ

B. RELATIVE PRONOUNS (ĐẠI TỪ QUAN HỆ)**1. Who:** dùng để thay thế cho danh từ chỉ người, làm chủ ngữ trong mệnh đề quan hệ

Ex: The man is Mr. Pike. He is standing over there.

=> The man **who** is standing over there is Mr. Pike.

2. Whom: dùng để thay thế cho danh từ chỉ người, làm tân ngữ trong mệnh đề quan hệ

Ex: That is the girl I told you about her.

=> That is the girl **whom** I told you about.

- **Note:** Whom làm tân ngữ có thể được bỏ đi trong mệnh đề quan hệ xác định.

3. **Which:** *which* dùng để thay thế cho danh từ chỉ vật, làm chủ ngữ hoặc tân ngữ trong mệnh đề quan hệ.

Ex: *The dress is very beautiful. I bought it yesterday.*

=> *The dress **which** I bought yesterday is very beautiful.*

- **Note:** *Which* làm tân ngữ có thể được bỏ đi trong mệnh đề quan hệ xác định.

4. **That:** là đại từ chỉ cả người và vật, đứng sau danh từ để làm chủ ngữ hoặc tân ngữ trong mệnh đề quan hệ.

Ex: *This is the book. I like it best.*

=> *This is the book **that** I like best.*

- **Note:** + Sau dấu phẩy không bao giờ dùng **That**

+ *That* luôn được dùng sau các danh từ hỗn hợp (gồm cả người lẫn vật) **everything, something, anything, all little, much, none** và sau dạng so sánh nhất

5. **Whose:** là đại từ quan hệ chỉ sở hữu. *Whose* đứng trước danh từ chỉ người hoặc vật và thay thế cho tính từ sở hữu hoặc sở hữu cách trước danh từ. Sau *whose* là danh từ.

Ex: *John found a cat. **Its leg** was broken.*

=> *John found a cat **whose leg** was broken.*

C. RELATIVE ADVERBS (TRẠNG TỪ QUAN HỆ)

1. **When:** dùng để thay thế cho danh từ chỉ thời gian, **When** được thay cho *at/on/ in* + *danh từ thời gian* hoặc *then*.

Ex: *May Day is a day. People hold a meeting on that day.*

2. **Where:** dùng để thay thế cho danh từ chỉ nơi chốn, **Where** được thay cho *at/on/ in* + *danh từ nơi chốn* hoặc *there*.

Ex: *Do you know the country? I was born.*

=> *Do you know the country **where** I was born?*

3. **Why:** dùng để thay thế cho danh từ chỉ lí do. **Why** thay cho *for which*.

Ex: *I don't know the reason. She left him alone.*

=> *I don't know the reason why she left him alone.*

PART 2: PRACTICE

A. PHONETICS AND PHONOLOGY

- I. Find the word which has a different sound in the underlined part.

- | | | | |
|------------------------|------------------------|----------------------|---------------------|
| 1. A. <u>campus</u> | B. <u>pr</u> actice | C. <u>l</u> anguage | D. <u>f</u> avorite |
| 2. A. <u>qualify</u> | B. <u>sce</u> nery | C. <u>gro</u> cery | D. <u>a</u> cademy |
| 3. A. <u>speak</u> | B. <u>nee</u> d | C. <u>he</u> art | D. <u>re</u> ad |
| 4. A. <u>practiced</u> | B. <u>learned</u> | C. <u>asked</u> | D. <u>watched</u> |
| 5. A. <u>sch</u> ool | B. <u>sch</u> olarship | C. <u>ch</u> emistry | D. <u>ch</u> ildren |

II. Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.

- | | | | |
|------------------|---------------|--------------|-------------|
| 1. A. office | B. fluency | C. accent | D. official |
| 2. A. language | B. translate | C. speaker | D. imitate |
| 3. A. variety | B. derivative | C. establish | D. dialect |
| 4. A. provide | B. bilingual | C. immersion | D. rusty |
| 5. A. simplicity | B. American | C. obedient | D. flexible |

B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

I. Give the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

1. If he (clean)_____ his windscreen he'd be able to see where he was going.
2. If you drove your car into the river, you (be able)_____ to get out?
3. If you (not belong)_____ to a union, you couldn't get a job.
4. If I (win)_____ a big prize in a lottery, I'd give up my job.
5. What you (do)_____ if you found a burglar in your house?
6. I could tell you what this means if I (know)_____ Greek.
7. If everybody (give)_____ I pound we would have enough.
8. He might get fat if he (stop)_____ smoking.
9. If he knew that it was dangerous he (not come)_____.
10. If you (see)_____ someone drowning, what would you do?

II. Make the following using relative clauses.

1. Alice is my friend. Alice's mother died last year.
2. The boy will be punished. He threw that stone.
3. Ann is very friendly. She lives next door.
4. The man is a famous actor. You met him at the party last night.
5. There are some words. They are very difficult to translate.
6. I was looking for a book this morning. I've found it now.
7. Is that the car? You want to buy it.
8. Sandra works in advertising. You were talking to her.
9. The little girl ate sweets the whole way. She sat next to me on the coach.
10. Lan is a journalist. Her tape recorder was stolen.

III. Complete the sentence with a suitable word.

1. You'd better learn by _____ all the new words.
2. What _____ of learning English do you find difficult?
3. Most foreign students live in _____ on campus.
4. His novel won the Booker Prize and established his _____.
5. You can take the exam at intermediate or advanced _____.
6. If you want to sell your car, why not put an _____ in the daily paper?
7. On the way, we stopped three times to admire mountain _____.
8. I've never seen this word before. Use a _____ to look it up.

IV. Match the phrases in column A with appropriate information from column B (More than one answer is possible)

A	B
1. You can improve your English accent ...	a. by doing translation exercises.
2. A good way to learn idioms is ...	b. by talking to native English speakers.
3. You can improve your writing skills ...	c. by reading magazines in English.
4. A good way to learn new vocabulary...	d. by studying a learner's dictionary.
5. You can learn to read faster ...	e. by practicing dialogues with a partner.
6. One way of practicing conversation is ...	f. by watching American movies.
7. You can learn to use grammar correctly ...	g. by having a private tutor.
8. You can develop self-confidence in speaking English...	h. by talking to yourself in the shower

V. Use the correct form of the word given to complete each sentence

- English speaking presents special _____ for foreign learners. (**difficult**)
- The school is performing well, but we recognize the need for further _____. (**improve**)
- Let me introduce you a _____ university. I think it's really reliable. (**repute**)
- We placed _____ in a number of national newspapers. (**advertise**)
- If you want to attend the course, you must pass the _____ examination. (**write**)
- The teaching staff are all well _____. (**qualify**)
- We _____ gather our things and run to the bus stop. (**hurry**)
- I go hill-walking for _____. (**relax**)
- Students will take an _____ at the end of the year. (**examine**)
- The university has an international _____ as a center of excellent. (**repute**)

C. READING**I. Read the following passage and fill in the blank with a suitable word.**

Being able to speak English allows you to (1)_____ effectively in numerous countries, and this opens up lots of possibilities for you in terms of the countries you could choose to seek (2)_____ in one day – not to mention travel to as a tourist. You won't have to worry about (3)_____ lost when you travel to an English-speaking country, as you'll easily be able to ask for directions, and taking guided tours, ordering food and chatting to the locals will no (4)_____ be a source of stress.

What's more, careers that involve lots of travel or international exposure, (5)_____ as the airline, tourism and film (6)_____, use English as their (7)_____ language, and many employers in these sectors are likely to (8)_____ evidence of a certain level of proficiency in English before they will consider (9)_____ you. This means that if you can speak English, you'll find that you have a greater number of possible careers to (10)_____ from after you finish at university.

II. Read the passage below and do the tasks.

Over the past 600 years, English has grown from a language of few speakers to become the dominant language of international communication. English as we know it today emerged around 1350, after having incorporated many elements of French that were introduced following the Norman invasion of 1030. Until the 1600s, English was, for the most part, spoken only in England and had not extended even as far as Wales, Scotland, or Ireland. However, during the course of the next two centuries, English began to spread around the globe as a result of exploration, trade (including slave trade), colonization, and missionary work. Thus, small **enclaves** of English speakers became established and grew in various parts of the world. As these communities **proliferated**, English gradually became the primary language of international business, banking, and diplomacy.

Currently, about 80 percent of the information stored on computer systems worldwide is in English. Two-thirds of the world's science writing is in English, and English is the main language of technology, advertising, media, international airports, and air traffic controllers. Today there are more than 700 million English users in the world, and over half of these are non native speakers, constituting the largest number of non-native users than any other language in the world.

- What is the main topic of this passage?
 - The number of non-native users of English
 - The French influence on the English language
 - The expansion of English as an international language
 - The use of English for science and technology
- Approximately when did English begin to be used beyond England?
 - In 1066
 - Around 1350
 - Before 1600
 - After the 1600s
- According to the passage, all of the following contributed to the spread of English around the world EXCEPT _____.
 - the slave trade
 - the Norman invasion
 - missionaries
 - colonization
- The word “**enclaves**” in the passage could best be replaced by which of the following?
 - communities
 - organizations
 - regions
 - countries
- The word “**proliferated**” in the passage is closest in meaning to which of the following?
 - prospered
 - organized
 - disbanded
 - expanded

III. Read the text carefully, then decide whether the following statements are True or False**LEARNING ENGLISH**

It is not easy for adult students of English to improve their accent. Unlike children, who are flexible, adults often find it hard to change the way they speak. This is why even the top, or smartest adult students have difficulty with pronunciation. There are several things that an international student can do to improve his or her pronunciation.

One method is to sign up for a pronunciation class. Studying pronunciation can help students to understand the rules of English, but in order to practice speaking, students often need to be exposed to English outside the classroom as well. This is why many students say that studying in an English-speaking country greatly affects their English. Living with native speakers can help students to learn new vocabulary as well as improve their accents. International students can also

learn important cultural information. This can help to prevent misunderstandings that can occur when people from different cultures live together.

1. Adult students of English cannot improve their accents because they are _____
slow to change.
2. Most young students are able to change their pronunciation easily. _____
3. Attending a pronunciation class can be very helpful to adult learners who _____
have problems with their pronunciation.
4. All that they need to improve their pronunciation is to practice more outside _____
the classroom.
5. To avoid misunderstandings about cultures, students should live with native _____
speakers.

D. WRITING

I. Rewrite the sentences below as single sentence using relative clauses.

1. I don't know the name of the woman. I spoke to her on the phone.
→ _____
2. We often go to visit our friends in Bristol. It's only 30 miles away.
→ _____
3. This is Mr Carter. I was telling you about him.
→ _____
4. That is the room. The meeting is held in that room.
→ _____
5. I'll always remember the day. I first saw that sight on that day.
→ _____
6. She was born in Malaysia. Rubber trees grow well there.
→ _____
7. No one knows the school. My uncle taught at that school 10 years ago.
→ _____
8. Please ask them the time. The train started the trip at that time.
→ _____
9. New Year's Day is a day. All family members gather and enjoy a family dinner then.
→ _____
10. There are many hotels. Tourists can enjoy their holidays there.
→ _____

II. Rewrite the sentences using the conditional type 2.

1. Keep silent or you'll wake the baby up.
→ _____
2. Stop talking or you won't understand the lesson.
→ _____

3. I don't know her number, so I don't ring her up.

→ _____

4. I don't know the answer, so I can't tell you.

→ _____

5. We will get lost because we don't have a map.

→ _____

PART 3: TEST YOURSELF

I. Choose a word in each line that has different stress pattern.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|----------------|---------------|------------------|
| 1. A. foreign | B. practice | C. examine | D. language |
| 2. A. dormitory | B. university | C. institute | D. college |
| 3. A. academic | B. reputation | C. experience | D. intermediate |
| 4. A. advertise | B. express | C. remember | D. improve |
| 5. A. scenery | B. scholarship | C. dictionary | D. advertisement |

II. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.

- They could understand our conversation if they _____ some English.
A. will know B. know C. knew D. would know
- It's an important part of your cultural identity to keep your _____ in speaking English.
A. accent B. skill C. vocabulary D. language
- Trying to use a _____ dictionary less and switching to a monolingual one can help you to stop translating in your head when you are speaking or listening.
A. bi-monthly B. bilingual C. biannual D. bicentenary
- If I had more time I _____ a Business English course.
A. take B. took C. will take D. would take
- Much _____ comes through body language and gesture.
A. speech B. communication C. talk D. exchange
- Are you someone who can read and write well in English but cannot speak _____?
A. fluency B. a fluency C. fluent D. fluently
- In a _____ class, this is a great opportunity to learn about different customs and traditions around the world.
A. multi-dimensional B. multinational
C. multilingual D. multi-disciplinary
- The children _____ attend that English school receive good education.
A. which B. whose C. who D. whom
- Try to _____ the meaning of words rather than going straight for your dictionary.
A. decide B. except C. judge D. guess
- If you get _____ when speaking, take two deep breaths before you say something.
A. pleased B. unwilling C. annoyed D. nervous

11. Mike comes from a city _____ is located in the southern part of _____ England.
A. when B. that C. where D. who
12. Reading is the best way to _____ your vocabulary in any language.
A. raise B. put up C. improve D. increase
13. No one ever improves pronunciation and _____ by watching someone else's shape of the mouth! You improve English speaking by speaking, not watching.
A. accent B. sounds C. rhythm D. tone
14. The picture reminds him of the time _____ he studied in New York.
A. where B. why C. which D. when
15. He is not exactly rich but he certainly earns enough to _____.
A. get on B. get up C. get down D. get by
16. The language that you learn to speak from birth is _____ language
A. second B. foreign C. official D. first
17. If I _____ taller, I _____ better at basketball.
A. be – would be B. were – might be
C. am – will be D. were – would have been
18. Reading helps you learn vocabulary easily as you will _____ new words without even realizing it when you read.
A. face up B. look up C. pick up D. give up
19. If you _____ in my position, what would you do?
A. were B. would be C. are D. will be
20. If you want to improve your speaking skill, you should attend the courses that are taught in a _____ way.
A. lexical B. communicative C. traditional D. domestic
21. There was a storm _____ had never experienced before.
A. which B. for which C. such as D. as which
22. It is not easy to _____ foreign language without communicating with the native speakers regularly.
A. master B. challenge C. translate D. simplify
23. Children always want to know the reason _____ things are as they are.
A. which B. who C. why D. whom
24. Is the first of March the day _____ the astronaut will come and give a speech at our school?
A. which B. when C. that D. what
25. There are many _____ of English all over the world such as British English, American English and Indian English.
A. dialogues B. varieties C. speakers D. terms

III. Give the correct form of the verbs.

1. The whole machine would fall to pieces if you (remove)_____ that screw.
2. I (keep)_____ a horse if I could afford it.
3. I'd go and see him more often if he (live)_____ on a bus route.

4. If they (ban)_____ the sale of alcohol at football matches, there might be less violence.
5. I (offer)_____ to help if I thought I'd be any use.
6. What would you do if the lift (get)_____ stuck between two floors?
7. If you (paint)_____ the walls white, the room would be much brighter.
8. If you (change)_____ your job, would it affect your pension?
9. If you knew you had only six weeks to live, how you (spend)_____ those six weeks?
10. I'd climb over the wall if there (not be)_____ so much broken glass on top of it.

IV. Read the passage and choose A, B, C or D that best fits each of the gaps.

The country is more beautiful than a town and (1)_____ to live in. Many people think so, and go to the country for the summer holidays (2)_____ they cannot live there all the year round. Some have a cottage (3)_____ in a village so that they can go there whenever they can find the time.

English villages are not all alike, but in some ways they are not different (4)___ one another. Almost every village has a church, the round or square tower of (5)_____ can be seen for many miles around. Surrounding the church is the churchyard, where people are (6)_____.

The village (7)_____ is a wide stretch of grass, and houses or cottages are built round it. Country life is now fairly (8)_____ and many villages have water brought through pipes into each house. Most villages are so (9)_____ some small towns that people can go there to buy (10)_____ they can't find in the village shop.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|----------------|--------------|--------------|
| 1. A. please | B. pleased | C. pleasure | D. pleasant |
| 2. A. because | B. though | C. despite | D. therefore |
| 3. A. build | B. building | C. built | D. is built |
| 4. A. from | B. with | C. on | D. for |
| 5. A. it | B. this | C. that | D. which |
| 6. A. playing | B. rested | C. praying | D. buried |
| 7. A. entrance | B. center | C. green | D. outskirts |
| 8. A. difficult | B. comfortable | C. enjoyable | D. improved |
| 9. A. far away | B. out of | C. beyond | D. close to |
| 10. A. what | B. those | C. which | D. when |

V. Fill in the blank with a suitable word in the box.

command	international	governments	communication	globalization
multilingual	quality	dominant	resources	disadvantage

Did you realize that over a two billion people in the world now speak English? According to a recent report "...three billion people will be speaking or learning English within a decade." English is the language of (1)_____. It's the language of (2)_____ business and politics. It is the primary language used for most computers and for the inner workings of the Internet.

English is the (3)_____ international language in communications, science, aviation, entertainment, radio and diplomacy. English is an important tool for operating on the world stage. The ability to speak and understand English is mandatory in certain fields, professions, and occupations. In fact, English is so widely spoken, it is referred to as, the “lingua franca” of the modern era.

With the global spread of English serious economic and political (4)_____ will probably come to those not having a reasonable command of the language. We see a future in which monolingual English graduates face bleaker economic prospects as qualified (5)_____ graduates prove to have a competitive advantage in global companies and organizations. Given that English has acquired its world-wide reputation due in large part to globalized power relations, those companies and (6)_____ employing well-trained non-native speakers for their international business (7)_____ needs will obviously see the advantage of hiring non-native speakers of the English languages with multilingual talents. The future is in your hands and the future demands a firm (8)_____ of the English language.

If you don't find what you're looking for on this page just enter your term in the rectangular box above labeled - Search the Web: which is at the top right hand corner of each window. You may be surprised at the number of (9)_____ responses you'll receive, and I'll bet before long you'll find exactly what you're looking for, all in the comfort and privacy of your own home.

So - sit back, put your feet up, and take all the time you want until you find the perfect (10)_____ you'll want to work with while learning the English language.

VI. Read the passage, and choose the correct answer A, B, C or D for each question.

Every year, students in many countries learn English. Some of these students are young children. Others are teenagers. Many are adults. Some learn at school, others study by themselves. A few learn English just by hearing the language in films, on television, in the office or among their friends. But not many are lucky enough to do that. Most people must work hard to learn another language.

Many boys and girls learn English at school because it is one of their subjects. They study their own language, mathematics, and English. In England, America, or Australia, many boys and girls study their native language, which is English, mathematics, and another language, perhaps French, or German or Spanish.

Many adults learn English because it is useful for their work. Teenagers often learn English for their higher studies, because some of their books are in English at college or university. Others learn English because they want to read newspapers or magazines in English.

- Many adults learn English because _____.
 A. most of their books are in English B. it helps them in their work
 C. English is spoken in their office D. they want to go abroad
- According to the writer _____.
 A. English is useful only for teenagers B. English is popular all over the world
 C. only adults learn English D. no children like to learn English
- In America or Australia many school children study _____.
 A. such foreign languages as French, German, and Spanish
 B. their own language and no foreign language
 C. English as a foreign language
 D. English and mathematics only

4. Most people learn English by _____.
A. hearing the languages in the office B. talking with foreigners
C. watching videos only D. working hard on their lessons
5. Many boys and girls learn English because _____.
A. they are forced to learn it B. they have to study their own languages
C. it is included in their study courses D. English can give them a job

VII. Complete the sentence with one preposition

1. You shouldn't believe everything you read _____ the newspapers.
2. The course starts _____ 3rd November and ends _____ January.
3. _____ first we didn't like each other, but _____ the end we became good friends.
4. I was disappointed _____ the grade I received on my last exam.
5. Are you interested _____ learning foreign languages?
6. We are looking forward _____ new possibilities.
7. We can live _____ a dormitory _____ campus.
8. What aspect _____ learning English do you find difficult?
9. Practice listening _____ English tapes or English programs _____ the radio.
10. The hotel is close _____ the historical district.

VIII. Choose the underlined word or phrase (A, B, c or D) that needs correcting.

1. On the way home, we saw a lot of men, women, and dogs which were playing in the park.
A B C D
2. The man whom remained in the office was the manager.
A B C D
3. This novel, which written by a well known writer, should be read.
A B C D
4. My friend George, that arrived late, was not permitted to enter the class.
A B C D
5. This is the only place which we can obtain scientific information.
A B C D
6. Chemistry is one branch of science on that most of the industries depend.
A B C D
7. 1975 is the year in when the revolution took place.
A B C D
8. Mr. Brown, that teaches me English, is coming today.
A B C D
9. The hotel where we stay in last year was excellent.
A B C D
10. At last they found the woman and her cat which were badly injured by the fire.
A B C D

IX. Rewrite the following sentence using a relative clause.

1. India is a country. The earthquake occurred in this country last month.

→ _____

2. Bac Giang is a city. I was born and grew up there.

→ _____

3. We have not decided the day. We'll go to London on that day.

→ _____

4. The man made me sad the most. I love him with all my heart.

→ _____

5. The thief was caught. This was really good news.

→ _____

6. The gentleman was very young. He was introduced as the most successful businessman.

→ _____

7. His book became the best seller. It was published last year.

→ _____

8. Neil Armstrong lived in the USA. He walked on the moon.

→ _____

9. Nam is very intelligent. He learns in our class.

→ _____

10. Ha Long has grown into a big city over the past few years. I visited the city last year.

→ _____

Unit
10

SPACE TRAVEL

PART 1: GRAMMAR REVIEW

I. SIMPLE PAST (QUÁ KHỨ ĐƠN)

a. Với động từ “to be”:

Form:

- (+) S + was/ were + O
- (-) S + wasn't/ weren't + O
- (?) Was/ were (not) + S + O?

b. Với động từ “to do”:

Form:

- (+) S + Ved + O
- (-) S + didn't + V + O
- (?) Did (not) + S + V + O?

c. Uses (Cách sử dụng)

- Diễn tả hành động đã xảy ra và chấm dứt hoàn toàn trong quá khứ.

Ex: - I saw a movie yesterday.

- Last year, I traveled to Japan.

- Diễn tả một chuỗi các hành động liên tiếp xảy ra trong quá khứ.

Ex: - Did you add flour, pour the milk and then add the eggs?

d. Advs (Trạng ngữ nhận biết)

- Yesterday, ago, upon a time, in 1945 (in a specific year in the past....), last...

e. Một số lưu ý đối với thì quá khứ đơn:

* Quy tắc thêm “ed” với động từ thường:

- Hầu hết động từ được thêm “ed” để biến thành động từ dạng quá khứ

Ex: work – worked, visit – visited

- Một vài động từ kết thúc bằng phụ âm “y” thì biến “y” thành “i” rồi thêm “ed” để biến thành dạng động từ quá khứ.

Ex: study – studied, carry – carried

- Một vài động từ có dạng 1:1:1 (1 phụ âm + 1 nguyên âm + 1 phụ âm) thì ta gấp đôi phụ âm cuối rồi thêm “ed”.

Ex: plan – planned, fit – fitted

*** Cách phát âm đối với động từ có đuôi “ed”:****1. Đúng nhất:** Theo phiên âm quốc tế, khi –ED đứng sau các âm sau sẽ được phát âm như sau:

Phát âm của -ED	Các âm trước -ED							
/ɪd/	/t/				/d/			
/t/	/k/	/f/	/p/	/ʃ/	/tʃ/	/s/	/t/	θ
/d/	Các nguyên âm và phụ âm còn lại							

2. Mẹo vặt (Không đúng 100%): Theo hình vị tự:

Phát âm của -ED	Các âm trước -ED									
/ɪd/	t					d				
/t/	p	x	ce	f	ch	sh	gh	s	ph	k
/d/	Các nguyên âm và phụ âm còn lại									

- Đọc chơi cho dễ nhớ: Pà xã, có fải chú sáu ghé sang Thuận Phước không?
- Bạn có thể đặt thành câu khác cho riêng mình để dễ nhớ.

Ex:

/ɪd/	wanted, needed, demanded, suggested, mended, hated, visited, ...
/t/	walked, liked, stopped, raped, washed, watched, laughed, sentenced, rated, breathed, stated, looked, cooked, sniffed, missed, mixed, ...
/d/	played, studied, changed, matched, decreed, ...

Notes:

- Khi *th phát âm là / θ / thì –ed mới phát âm là / t / như breathed, ...
- Khi *th phát âm là / ð / thì –ed phát âm là / d / như bathed, ...
- Khi *gh phát âm là / f / thì –ed phát âm là / t / như laughed, coughed, ...
- Khi *gh là âm câm thì –ed phát âm là / d / như ploughed, ...
- Nguyên âm + S + ED thì –ed thường được phát âm là / d / như praised, chased, raised, ...
- Có một chữ có –ed tận cùng được phát âm là /ɪd/. Chữ đó là hundred /'hʌn.drəd/

II. PAST PERFECT (QUÁ KHỨ HOÀN THÀNH)**a. Form:**

(+) S + **had** + **Vp2/ed** + O
 (-) S + **hadn't** + **Vp2/ed** + O
 (?) **Had (not)** + S + **Vp2/ed** + O?

b. Uses (Cách sử dụng)

- Diễn tả một hành động xảy ra trước 1 hành động khác trong QK (hành động xảy ra trước dùng QKHT; hành động xảy ra sau dùng QKĐ)

Ex: *I had never seen such a beautiful beach before I went to Kauai.*

- Hành động xảy ra trước 1 thời điểm xác định trong quá khứ.

Ex: *I had worked as a librarian before 2010. (Trước năm 2010, tôi là một quản thư)*

c. Advs (Trạng ngữ nhận biết)

- When, before, after

ĐỊNH LÝ BÙI VĂN VINH

TLĐ/ TLHT/ HTĐ +	WHEN	+ HTĐ
QK +	WHEN	+ QKĐ
QKĐ/ QKTD +	WHEN	+ QKTD
TLĐ/ TLHT/ TLHTTD +	BEFORE	+ HTĐ
QKHT +	BEFORE	+ QKĐ
	HTHT	+ BEFORE
QKĐ +	AFTER	+ QKHT
WHEN = AS = AS SOON AS = UNTIL = BY THE TIME		

III. DEFINING/ NON-DEFINING RELATIVE CLAUSE (Mệnh đề quan hệ xác định và không xác định)

1. Defining relative clause (Mệnh đề quan hệ xác định)

- Đây là mệnh đề cần thiết vì danh từ mà nó bổ nghĩa là không xác định.
- Mệnh đề quan hệ bổ nghĩa cho danh từ trước nó, làm cho người đọc và người nghe được danh từ được đề cập là ai, là cái gì.
- Không có nó câu sẽ không đủ nghĩa.
- Không sử dụng dấu phẩy.

Ex: - The man who lives next door to me is very friendly.

- The book which I bought yesterday is very interesting.

2. Non-defining relative clause (Mệnh đề quan hệ không xác định)

- Đây là mệnh đề không cần thiết vì danh từ mà nó bổ nghĩa đã được xác định cụ thể.
- Không có nó câu vẫn đủ nghĩa.
- Mệnh đề quan hệ không xác định được ngăn cách với mệnh đề chính bằng dấu phẩy.
- Trước danh từ thường có: **this, that, these, those, my, his, her...** và danh từ riêng.

Ex: - Mr. Thanh, who is from Ha Tinh province, is a friendly English teacher.

- Ha Noi, which is the capital of Vietnam, is in the north of Vietnam.

PART 2: PRACTICE

A. PHONETICS AND PHONOLOGY

I. Choose a word in each line that has different stress pattern.

1. A. commercial B. surface C. approach D. impressive
2. A. descend B. explore C. profession D. altitude
3. A. astronomical B. emergency C. experiment D. collaborate

4. A. simulated B. trainee C. missionary D. spacewalk
5. A. observatory B. historical C. activity D. parabolic

II. Find the word which has a different sound in the underlined part.

1. A. astronomy B. astronomer C. astrology D. astronaut
2. A. telescope B. microgravity C. cooperate D. rockets
3. A. mission B. universe C. sense D. space
4. A. meteorite B. satellite C. microgravity D. orbit
5. A. museum B. missu C. hopeless D. guessu

B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

I. Match the words/ expressions in column A with their meanings in column B.

A	B
1. take off	a. fight, argument
2. a face-off	b. an agreement
3. spaceship	c. a strong position in business
4. a deal	d. rich
5. a foothold	e. becoming known
6. spaceport	f. a spacecraft that carries people through space
7. well-to-do	g. departure point for space flights
8. emerging	h. leave the ground and start flying

Your answers:

1.	2.	3.	4.
5.	6.	7.	8.

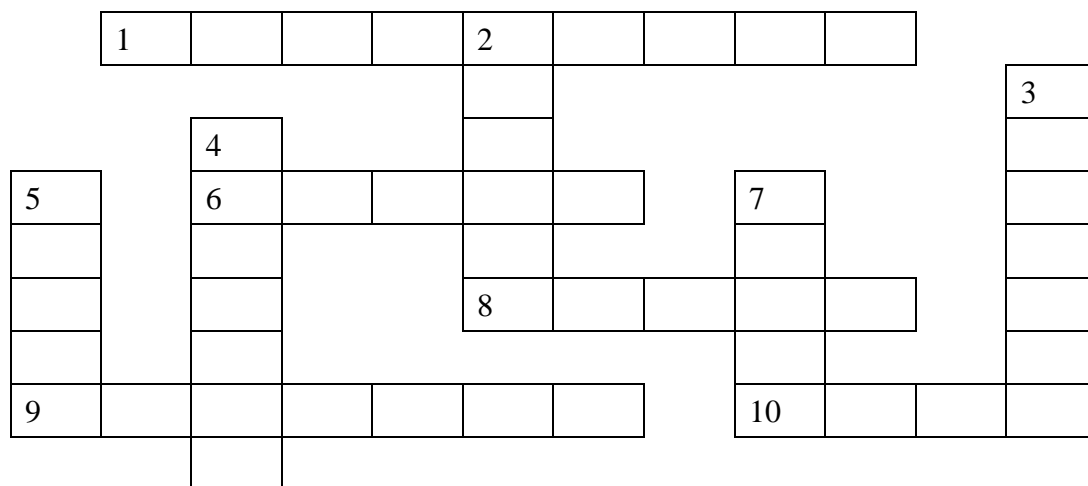
II. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense.

1. In 1543, Nicolaus Copernicus (**publish**) _____ “On the Revolutions of the Heaven Spheres” claiming that the Earth and the planets (**orbit**) _____ the Su.
2. Galileo (**use**) _____ the telescope to view the stars and planets before Isaac Newton (**invent**) _____ the first reflecting telescope.
3. In 1686, Isaac Newton (**publish**) _____ the Mathematical Principles of Natural Philosophy where he (**lay**) _____ the foundations for universal gravitation and (**describe**) _____ the motion of the Sun and the planets.
4. After Robert Goddard (**work**) _____ on the rocket technology, he (**invent**) _____ and (**launch**) _____ the first liquid-fueled rocket in 1926.
5. On November 3, 1957, the Russian dog Laika (**become**) _____ the first animal in orbit after fruit flies (**be sent**) _____ to outer space by the United States.

6. In 1983, Sally Ride (**become**) _____ the first American woman in space after Russian cosmonaut Valentina Tereshkova (**be sent**) _____ in space twenty years earlier.
7. France (**launch**) _____ its first satellite before Japan (**put**) _____ its test satellite into orbit.
8. In 1971, the United Kingdom successfully (**launch**) _____ its satellite into orbit after China (**do**) _____ that one year earlier.

III. Do word search

WORD BANK: Earth, Jupiter, Mercury, moons, rings, star, surface, system, telescope, Venus.



ACROSS

1. All nine planets can be seen through a _____.
6. The planet that we call home.
8. A Jupiter has about 69 different _____; the biggest one being Ganymede.
9. The _____ of Mars is red and rocky.
10. The sun is the biggest _____ in our Solar System.

DOWN

2. Our Solar _____ has nine known planets.
3. The largest planet in our Solar System.
4. The closest planet to the Sun.
5. In 1610, Galileo discovered that Saturn has many _____.
7. The second planet from the sun and is known as Earth's sister planet.

IV. The word in brackets at the end of each of the following sentences can be used to form a word that fits suitably in the blank.

1. On the ISS, _____ have to attach themselves so they don't float around.
2. It is cheaper to build an unmanned _____ than the one that is manned.
3. In 2015 NASA discovered an Earth-like planet which might be _____ because it has 'just the right' conditions to support liquid water and possibly even life.

ASTRONOMY

SPACE

HABITAT

4. One of the largest _____ found on Earth is the Hoba from southwest Africa, which weighs about 54,000 kg.	METEORIC
5. Experiencing microgravity on a _____ flight is part of astronaut training programmes.	PARABOLIZE
6. It takes 365.256 days for Earth to _____ the Sun.	ORBITAL
7. Have you ever experienced _____?	WEIGHT
8. The spacecraft was _____ last week.	LAUNCH
9. In 2014 a robot named Philae, part of the Rosetta _____, successfully landed on a comet.	MISS
10. The training often takes place in a water tank laboratory so that trainees become familiar with crew activities in simulated _____ in order to perform spacewalks.	GRAVITY

V. Complete the sentences with the words from the box. Use each word once only.

orbit	operate	comet	float	microgravity
launch	mission	astronomy	astronaut	spacesuit

- The mission not only taught NASA about Venus, but also how to _____ a spacecraft far from Earth.
- The tail of a _____ can extend over 84 million miles, nearly the distance between the earth and the sun.
- The _____ of Apollo 11 was to land two men on the lunar surface and return them safely to Earth.
- Sally Ride became the first American woman _____ to fly in space in 1983 when she was 32 years old.
- People _____ in space because there is no gravity to pull them towards anything.
- In _____, astronauts can move things that weigh hundreds of pounds with just the tips of their fingers.
- The _____ of Apollo 13 was delayed from March 12th to April 11th, 1970 to give the new prime crew more time to train.
- Was Viet Nam's first telecom satellite Vinasat-1 put into _____ on April 18th, 2008?
- This _____ was worn by astronaut Neil Armstrong, the first human to set foot on the Moon.
- Quang is interested in _____. He can spend hours studying the sun, moon, stars and planets.

C. READING

I. Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

How old (1)_____ you be on Friday 13, 2029? That is how old you will be when a large asteroid, called Apophis, comes very, very close to (2)_____ planet. Asteroids are rocks that circle the sun in space and sometimes (3)_____ close to Earth and even hit it. Most asteroids are very small and, if you are lucky, you can sometimes see (4)_____ in the night

sky as ‘falling stars’. However, most scientists (5) _____ one large asteroid, about six to twelve kilometers across, hit the earth and killed all the dinosaurs about 65 million years ago. Apophis is also big. Scientists (6) _____ it (7) _____ 2004 and they say that it is about 300 meters across. That’s about the size of a large sports stadium. An asteroid this size, according to scientists, is (8) _____ large enough to destroy our world, but it is large enough to destroy several cities. It will probably miss the earth, they say, but not by very much – it will miss (9) _____ by about only 35,000 kilometers – that’s much closer than our moon which is about 240,000 kilometers away. Another way of thinking about it is that it will (10) _____ us by only a few minutes.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|---------------|-------------|--------------|
| 1. A. are | B. will | C. do | D. can |
| 2. A. our | B. us | C. ours | D. we |
| 3. A. came | B. comes | C. coming | D. come |
| 4. A. they | B. their | C. them | D. they’re |
| 5. A. believe | B. believed | C. believes | D. believing |
| 6. A. discovering | B. discovered | C. discover | D. discovers |
| 7. A. on | B. at | C. in | D. to |
| 8. A. no | B. don’t | C. isn’t | D. not |
| 9. A. we | B. us | C. our | D. ours |
| 10. A. missed | B. misses | C. missing | D. miss |

II. Read the text. Use the information in the story to answer the questions below by choosing the best answer A, B, C or D.

COMETS

Andy heard from his friends that a comet was coming. He knew that a comet was a space rock. Space rocks seemed exciting. He wanted to watch it at night. All he had to do was go outside and watch. That was easy enough.

That night, he put on a jacket and went outside. He looked around. He saw the moon, but he did not see anything else. There were only a couple clouds, so that was not the problem. He could see some stars, but nothing new or special. Where was the comet?

He called his friend on the phone. They talked about it. His friend told him where to look, but he still didn’t see it. What was going on? Was he not special enough to see it? Were his eyes going bad? What was he doing wrong?

Andy went to get his dad. Together, they looked up in the sky where it was supposed to be. Finally, after several minutes of looking, he saw a fuzzy thing, brighter and bigger than a star, but nowhere near what he expected.

“I thought it’d be like an extra moon or something.” Andy complained.

“It’s not big enough for that, and it still might be very far away.” Dad explained.

“I still wish I could see it better.”

Dad nodded and went inside. When he came back out, he had a telescope. Together, they focused in and saw the comet a little better. It wasn’t much, but it helped.

“What else can we see?” Andy wondered.

Dad smiled and aimed the telescope over at the moon instead. That was cool. Seeing the craters and the details of the moon up closer was nice.

Astronomy was interesting. Andy made sure to read more about it at school!

1. What was Andy excited to see in the sky?
 A. rainbows B. clouds C. the moon D. a comet
2. What problem did Andy have when he tries to look at the comet?
 A. There were too many and he couldn't find the right one.
 B. He couldn't see it.
 C. It was too bright to see anything.
 D. The sky was very cloudy.
3. When he couldn't find the comet, what did Andy do first?
 A. Called a friend B. Asked dad for help
 C. Got a telescope D. Checked the Internet
4. When he still couldn't find the comet, what did Andy do next?
 A. Called a friend B. Asked dad for help
 C. Got a telescope D. Checked the Internet
5. When he was disappointed by the comet, what did Andy's father show Andy?
 A. constellations B. a planet C. the moon D. a comet

III. Read the text and do the task below.

SATURN

Saturn is the second-largest planet and is a gas giant like Jupiter. Under clouds of methane, hydrogen, and helium, the sky slowly turns into a giant ocean of liquid chemicals. Saturn is the least dense planet in our solar system; it is made mostly of hydrogen and helium. Because it is so lightweight and spins so quickly, Saturn is not perfectly round like the other planets. Saturn is surrounded by thousands of small rings made of rocks and ice. It also has 140 natural satellites, like moons and pieces of debris.

► Answer the following questions:

1. How is Saturn similar to Jupiter?

2. What are the clouds made of?

3. Describe the surface of Saturn.

4. Why is Saturn not perfectly round?

5. Describe some of the things surrounding Saturn.

IV. Read the text and answer the following questions.

The Earth was formed about 4.7 billion years ago. The Earth's shape is very close to that of a sphere, not perfectly spherical. The Earth's equatorial diameter is about 12,756 km, which is slightly larger than the polar diameter; about 12,714 km. Surface Area of the Earth is 510,065,600 km² of which 148,939,100 km² (29.2%) is land and 361,126,400 km² (70.8 %) is water.

The Earth rotates on its axis, an imaginary straight line through its centre. The two points where the axis of rotation intersects the Earth's surface are called as the poles, one of them is called the North Pole and the other is known as the South Pole. One rotation with respect to Sun is completed in 24 hours, called a solar day.

1. When was the Earth created?

2. How is the Earth?

3. What main elements does the Earth include?

4. What are the places of the axis of rotation intersects the Earth's surface called?

5. How long is a solar day completed?

D. WRITING

I. Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it is as similar as possible in meaning to the original sentences. Use the word given and other words as necessary.

1. The class watched a film yesterday. The film was about the Apollo 13 space mission.

→ The film _____

2. We are meeting an astronomer tonight. This astronomer has discovered three Earth-like planets.

→ The astronomer _____

3. We read about an astronaut. The astronaut travelled into space in 1961.

→ We read about _____

4. Dennis Tito became the first space tourist in 2001. Anousheh Ansari travelled into space as a tourist in 2006.

→ When Anousheh Ansari _____

5. This is the man. He works for NASA.

→ The is the _____

6. I'm reading an article. The article is about NASA's plans to return humans to the moon.

→ I'm reading _____

II. Rewriting the following sentences using a relative pronoun.

1. This is the astronaut. He visited our school last week.

=> _____

2. This is the village. Helen Sharman, the first British astronaut, was born there.

=> _____

3. Can you talk more about the parabolic flights. You took them for your training?

=> _____

4. This is the museum. It has some of the best rock collections in the country.

=> _____

5. We'll explore inland Sweden and visit the summer house. Carin and Ola have built it themselves.

=> _____

6. This is the year. The first human walked on the moon on that day.

=> _____

III. Write complete sentences, using the words/ phrases given in their correct forms. You can add some more necessary words, but you have to use all the words given.

1. Pham Tuan/ Viet Nam's/ astronaut, and Christer Fuglesang/ Sweden's first astronaut.

=> _____

2. He found/ Earth didn't look/ big as he thought, no boundaries/ Earth could be seen from/ we should cooperate/ take care of it.

=> _____

3. It seemed/ he/ not enjoy it much/ since/ wasn't fresh.

=> _____

4. They talked/ him when he/ in space/ that made him happy.

=> _____

5. They think/ the chance/ fly to space/ equal for everyone.

=> _____

6. He/ think teamwork, social skills/ foreign languages/ important/ an astronaut.

=> _____

PART 3: TEST YOURSELF

I. Choose a word in each line that has different stress pattern.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|---------------|---------------|--------------|
| 1. A. commercial | B. galaxy | C. spacecraft | D. telescope |
| 2. A. astronomy | B. immune | C. astronomer | D. parabolic |
| 3. A. object | B. experiment | C. private | D. habitable |
| 4. A. maintenance | B. satellite | C. meteorite | D. adventure |
| 5. A. universe | B. satellite | C. experience | D. meteorite |

II. Fill in future continuous or future perfect to complete the sentences below.

- This time tomorrow morning Captain Neil Armstrong and his crew _____(leave) earth and _____(head) for the planet Mars.
- On the first day of their voyage, they _____(orbit) the earth every 20 seconds.
- Crew members Yuri Gagarin and Sally Ride _____(check) all the instrument all day long to make sure they are working properly. They _____(not/take) it easy.
- By the end of the year 2044 they _____(arrive) on the planet Mars. They _____(go) 100 million light years and yet they _____(not/age) even one year. Miraculous!

5. What _____ **(do/they)** about as they zip through space? Will they be frightened? I doubt it. They will be too busy.
6. The captain says that by the end of the first week, they _____ **(discover)** many interesting things about space and alien beings.
7. By the end of the first month aboard the spaceship, *the Martian Explorer*, the crew _____ **(get used to)** living without gravity and to eating their food out of tubes. On a normal day they _____ **(float)** around the cabin.
8. Scientists claim that within the next 50 years, they _____ **(find out)** whether life on Mars exists or not and they _____ **(meet)** those little green men, Martians.
9. In the meantime, let us wish good luck to Captain Armstrong and his crew. They _____ **(explore)** the outer reaches of the universe.
10. By 2044 _____ **(they/expand)** our knowledge of new frontiers and deep space.

III. Choose the best one (A, B, C or D) to complete the sentence.

1. Experiencing microgravity on a _____ flight is a part of astronaut training programmes.
A. orbit B. ship C. mission D. parabolic
2. As soon as the spacecraft _____ into space, the crew started to observe the sun.
A. has travelled B. had travelled C. travelled D. was travelling
3. Europe's biggest ISS project is the Columbus science laboratory _____ astronauts can carry out scientific experiments in weightless conditions.
A. there B. which C. where D. when
4. A _____ is an enormous system of stars in outer space.
A. comet B. galaxy C. universe D. solar system
5. In July of 1975, the first US-Soviet joint _____ occurred with the Apollo-Soyuz project.
A. company B. relation C. mission D. performance
6. The Astronauts Memorial Foundation honours all American astronauts _____ have lost their lives on missions or in training.
A. whom B. X C. which D. who
7. He's so brilliant and he can do anything - _____.
A. out of this world B. the sky's the limit
C. it's over the moon D. once in a blue
8. I _____ down to earth on my first Monday back to school after my holiday in Nha Trang.
A. come over B. come back C. come in D. come on
9. Yuri Gagarin made the first space flight _____ success attracted worldwide attention.
A. which B. when C. whose D. where
10. Aircraft flying in _____ arcs create microgravity for tests and simulations that last 20-25 seconds.
A. straight B. oval C. circular D. parabolic
11. The launch of the Space Shuttle Endeavour _____ broadcast live this morning.
A. has been B. was being C. was D. had been

12. Dan: Do you like to drink tea? Ben: I love coffee, but I only drink tea _____ in a blue moon.
A. one B. once C. first D. only
13. To walk on the moon, the astronauts had to carry a suitcase _____ contained oxygen.
A. which B. it C. having D. where
14. Yuri Gagarin became the first person to eat and drink in _____.
A. weightless B. gravity C. specific gravity D. microgravity
15. I passed all my exam – I'm _____!
A. out of this world B. the sky's the limit
C. over the moon D. once in a blue moon
16. The mission _____ they are talking about plans to send humans to Mars by 2030.
A. where B. X C. who D. when
17. "That's the coolest thing I've ever seen. It's really _____ this world."
A. into B. out of C. over D. on
18. In 2010, Naoko Yamazaki, the second female Japanese astronaut, _____ on Discovery space shuttle to the ISS after she _____ her training at the Johnson Space Center.
A. had flown – completed B. flew – had completed
C. flew – was completing D. was flying – was completing
19. Do you want to meet my colleague _____ son is training to be an astronaut?
A. that B. whom C. whose D. X
20. For people _____ work hard at this company, the sky's the limit.
A. which B. who C. whom D. X
21. Vinasat-1 is Viet Nam's first telecommunication _____, which was launched in 2008.
A. spacesuit B. astronomy C. microgravity D. satellite
22. The first _____ was done by Alexei Leonov, a Russia cosmonaut on March 18th, 1965. It was 10 minutes long.
A. spaceward B. spacesuit C. spacewalk D. spaceship
23. Pham Tuan said everything _____ quite strange although he _____ when he was on the ground.
A. was – had prepared B. had been – prepared
C. was – prepared D. was – has prepared
24. At night the ISS can easily be seen from the Earth, as it flies at the _____ of 320 kilometres above us.
A. attitude B. height C. level D. altitude
25. She's very intelligent and knowledgeable. She can _____ everything under the sun.
A. talk to B. talk about C. talk with D. talk of
26. The Milky Way is just a _____ in the universe and it contains our Solar System.
A. galaxy B. planet C. comet D. meteorite
27. Virgin Galactic is the world's first commercial _____.
A. spaceship B. exploration C. space D. spaceline

28. If you _____ the stars, all of your dreams will come true!
 A. reach at B. reach for C. reach in D. reach for
29. Christer Fuglesang said he enjoyed floating around in the _____ environment.
 A. weightless B. quiet C. homesick D. heavy
30. Mukai Chiaki, the first female Japanese astronaut, _____ 15 days aboard the space shuttle Columbia in space before it _____ to the Earth on July 23, 1994.
 A. was spending – was returning B. spent – was returning
 C. spent – had returned D. had spent – returned

IV. Fill in the blank with a suitable word in the box.

fuel	another	means	carry	demand/ need
possible	because	many	on	that/ which

Space exploration is the investigation of the universe beyond the Earth's atmosphere, by (1) _____ of manned and unmanned spacecraft. Despite the technological advancements achieved in the past, space exploration was only (2) _____ until the 20th century. The first successful orbital launch was made by the Soviet Union in 1957 which was called "Sputnik". When the topic "SPACE EXPLORATION" is put (3) _____ the table, a question has often been asked: "Why should we spend money on NASA while there are so (4) _____ problems here on Earth?" However, this might be partially wrong since exploring the unknown may help us progress.

The advantages of space exploration include the materials (5) _____ can be obtained from outer space. For instance, asteroids have iron and nickel which could be utilized to satisfy the (6) _____ for metal. Therefore, numerous commercial companies have invested in developing technology for asteroid mining. Several comets and asteroids (7) _____ solid water in them. This water can be used for astronauts and scientists in space stations. The water can also be broken down to hydrogen which can be used as (8) _____ for the rockets. Scientists also believe that dinosaurs disappeared because they couldn't go to (9) _____ planet. Sooner or later a killer comet will again cross Earth's path, threatening all life. Fortunately, (10) _____ we have knowledge about comets and space science, we will be able to survive.

V. Read the following passage and choose the best option for each numbered blank.

Neil Armstrong was the first person (1) _____ on the moon. He was born in Ohio on August 5, 1930. While he was in college, he left to serve in the U.S. Navy. He flew planes during the Korean War. Then he came back to college and finished the degree he (2) _____. He later (3) _____ a master's degree too.

Armstrong became an astronaut in 1962. He was the commander of Gemini 8 in 1966. Neil Armstrong (4) _____ the first successful connection of two vehicles in space.

Armstrong's second flight was Apollo 11 in 1969, and he was the mission commander. He flew with Buzz Aldrin and Michael Collins. Armstrong and Aldrin landed on the moon in a lunar module named "Eagle". With more than half a billion people (5) _____ on television, Armstrong (6) _____ the ladder and said, "That's one small step for a man, one giant leap for mankind." and Aldrin (7) _____ him shortly. They explored the surface for two and a half hours, collecting samples and taking photographs.

They left behind an American flag, and a plaque reading, “Here men from the planet Earth first (8)_____ upon the moon. July 1969 A. D. We came in (9)_____ for all mankind.”

After almost a day, they blasted off. They docked with Collins in (10)_____ around the moon. All three then flew back to the Earth.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|---------------|------------|------------------|
| 1. A. to walk | B. walked | C. walk | D. walking |
| 2. A. had started | B. starts | C. started | D. would start |
| 3. A. earned | B. scored | C. took | D. make |
| 4. A. operated | B. functioned | C. carried | D. performed |
| 5. A. to watch | B. watching | C. watch | D. watched |
| 6. A. descended | B. stepped | C. lowered | D. climbed down |
| 7. A. joined in | B. involved | C. joined | D. connected |
| 8. A. set foot | B. set feet | C. went | D set a foot |
| 9. A. silence | B. peace | C. freedom | D. communication |
| 10. A. height | B. distance | C. space | D. orbit |

VI. Read the passage, and choose the correct answer A, B, C or D for each question.

A MISSION TO MARS

Have you ever had a dream about traveling to another planet in our solar system? If you have, there is an actual programme that is happening right now, and it hopes to send people to Mars in 2023. Known as the Mars One Mission, it will send a crew of four people on a one-way mission to colonize Mars. Those chosen people will have to be ready to say good-bye to the earth forever, as there will not be a return trip.

For the people chosen, they will have to learn to do many different things. First of all, they will be living the rest of their lives with just a handful of other people, so they all must have personalities that allow them to get along. Second, the living quarters that they will have won't be very spacious, so they will have to deal with that condition as well. If they feel homesick, they will only be able to communicate with people back on the earth via e-mail and videos and audio sent back and forth. However, there won't be any real-time communication. Even at the speed of light, communication between the earth and Mars takes about 20 minutes.

Whether the Mars One Mission will actually happen is the big question that a lot of people are asking. There is an enormous skepticism in the science community, and *Wired* magazine gave the mission a miserable score of two out of ten on its probability scale. However, for those who dream to go to Mars, at least they can say there is a possibility that it could happen.

- Who might like to go on this mission?
 - People who get along with others
 - People who get homesick easily
 - People with angry personalities
 - People who don't like to communicate
- What will NOT happen to the people who go on the Mars One Mission?
 - They will communicate with people on the earth.
 - They will have to live with other people.
 - They will live in quarters that don't have a lot of space inside.
 - They will return to do the earth.

3. What will NOT be spacious?
 - A. The spaceship
 - B. The magazines
 - C. The mission
 - D. The living quarters
4. Which of the following is considered miserable?
 - A. A crew on board of the Mars One Mission.
 - B. A score of the programme on the probability scale.
 - C. A personality of people taking part in the programme.
 - D. A mission of astronauts to the ISS.
5. How long will it take for a message to come back from Mars?
 - A. Around 20 minutes
 - B. Only a few seconds
 - C. Almost immediately
 - D. About an hour

VII. Complete each of the following sentences using relatives or not relatives.

1. The student _____ was selected to join the space program is my brother's friend.
2. They showed me the place _____ the spaceship landed last week.
3. David introduced me to the woman _____ husband is working for NASA.
4. The astronomer _____ you want to meet is going to present a paper at the conference next Friday.
5. The twenty-ninth of May is the day _____ our astronauts will be returning home.
6. The man with _____ Mr. Khoa is talking has flown into space three times.
7. The satellite _____ was launched into space yesterday belongs to Viet Nam.
8. The space age began in 1957 _____ the Soviet Union launched Sputnik 1, the world's first man-made satellite.
9. An astronaut is a person _____ travels in a spacecraft into outer space.
10. The book _____ I'm reading is about the history of space exploration.

VIII. Underline the one mistake in each sentence and then correct it.

No.	Sentences	Correction
1.	Venus is the second planet of the sun.	
2.	Unlike most of the other planets in the solar system, Venus have no moons.	
3.	This is because they are similar into size, gravity and density.	
4.	Venus is also very different in the Earth.	
5.	These clouds trap the sun's heat, make Venus the hottest planet in the solar system.	
6.	Venus has sometimes called the "Morning star" or the "Evening star".	
7.	The atmosphere of Venus is mostly made up by carbon dioxide with clouds of sulphuric acid.	
8.	In Greek mythology, Venus is known as Aphrodite, the goddess of love and beautiful.	

IX. Complete the second sentence in each pair so that it has similar meaning to the first sentence.

1. The team plays on the left. The team has never won the championship.

=> The team _____

2. Neil Armstrong and Buzz Aldrin planted an American flag on the moon. They spoke to President Richard Nixon after that.

=> Before Neil Armstrong and Buzz Aldrin _____

3. This article describes a ground-breaking space mission to land on a comet. The mission is called Rosetta.

=> The ground-breaking space mission _____

4. Last week they visited a museum. The first artificial satellite is on display there.

=> Last week they _____

5. The Rosetta mission has a task. The task is comparable to a fly trying to land on a speeding bullet.

=> The task _____

X. Write complete sentences, using the words/ phrases given in their correct forms. You can add some more necessary words, but you have to use all the words given.

1. Nhat Nam/ crazy / space.

=> _____

2. He/ learnt about the universe/ had collected/ of books about space.

=> _____

3. To show that there/ more things/ the list but that it's not necessary/ list everything.

=> _____

4. He/ be not/ impressed/ because/ he thought the meteorite/ like an ordinary piece of rock.

=> _____

5. He/ compare it/ a ride/ a rollercoaster.

=> _____

Unit
11

CHANGING ROLES IN SOCIETY

PART 1: GRAMMAR REVIEW

1. BỊ ĐỘNG THÌ TƯƠNG LAI ĐƠN

Form:

Active:

- (+) S + will + V(nguyên thể) + O
 (-) S + won't + V(nguyên thể) + O
 (?) Will (not) + S + V(nguyên thể) + O?

Passive:

- (+) S + will + be + Vp2 + (by O)
 (-) S + won't + be + Vp2 + (by O)
 (?) Will (not) + S + be + Vp2 + (by O)?

Ví dụ:

- She will do a lot of things tomorrow.
 => A lot of things will be done by her tomorrow.

2. DEFINING/ NON-DEFINING RELATIVE CLAUSE (Mệnh đề quan hệ xác định và không xác định)

1. Defining relative clause (Mệnh đề quan hệ xác định)

- Đây là mệnh đề cần thiết vì danh từ mà nó bổ nghĩa là không xác định.
- Mệnh đề quan hệ bổ nghĩa cho danh từ trước nó, làm cho người đọc và người nghe được danh từ được đề cập là ai, là cái gì.
- Không có nó câu sẽ không đủ nghĩa.
- Không sử dụng dấu phẩy.

Ex: - The man who lives next door to me is very friendly.- The book which I bought yesterday is very interesting.

2. Non-defining relative clause (Mệnh đề quan hệ không xác định)

- Đây là mệnh đề không cần thiết vì danh từ mà nó bổ nghĩa đã được xác định cụ thể.
- Không có nó câu vẫn đủ nghĩa.
- Mệnh đề quan hệ không xác định được ngăn cách với mệnh đề chính bằng dấu phẩy.
- Trước danh từ thường có: **this, that, these, those, my, his, her...** và danh từ riêng.

Ex: - Mr. Thanh, who is from Ha Tinh province, is a friendly English teacher.- Ha Noi, which is the capital of Vietnam, is in the north of Vietnam.

PART 2: PRACTICE

A. PHONETICS AND PHONOLOGY

I. Choose a word in each line that has different stress pattern.

- | | | | |
|--------------------|----------------|----------------|-----------------|
| 1. A. pressure | B. whiteboard | C. responsive | D. whiteboard |
| 2. A. drastically | B. distinction | C. enjoyable | D. dependent |
| 3. A. notification | B. individual | C. competition | D. geographical |
| 4. A. demolish | B. syllabus | C. industrial | D. commercial |
| 5. A. computer | B. science | C. theoretical | D. facility |

II. Find the word which has a different sound in the underlined part.

- | | | | |
|---------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. A. house <u>work</u> | B. vi <u>s</u> ion | C. hos <u>p</u> ital | D. clas <u>s</u> room |
| 2. A. bu <u>r</u> den | B. cu <u>r</u> tain | C. tu <u>r</u> tle | D. cu <u>r</u> riculum |
| 3. A. re <u>s</u> ponsive | B. con <u>t</u> ent | C. se <u>c</u> tor | D. se <u>n</u> se |
| 4. A. discus <u>s</u> ion | B. provi <u>s</u> ion | C. permissi <u>s</u> ion | D. cushi <u>n</u> on |
| 5. A. evaluat <u>i</u> on | B. facilitat <u>o</u> r | C. guid <u>a</u> nce | D. femal <u>e</u> |

B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

I. The word in brackets at the end of each of the following sentences can be used to form a word that fits suitably in the blank.

- | | |
|--|--------------------|
| 1. Women these days prefer to be _____ independent. | FINANCIAL |
| 2. Most services nowadays are mass-focused, not _____ - oriented. | |
| 3. I agree that academic performance is not the only criterion to _____ a person. | INDIVIDUAL |
| 4. Teacher will become _____ rather than information providers. | EVALUATION |
| 5. The town hasn't got any parks where people can go and _____. | FACILITY |
| 6. This syllabus is quite _____. I want to see something more hands-on. | RELAXING |
| 7. A successful education must be _____ to social demands. | THEORY |
| 8. My son took part in the Beyond 2030 forum, which invited people to share their _____ of the future. | RESPOND |
| 9. He has a strong sense of _____. You can always rely on him. | VISUAL |
| 10. She has no _____ of style at all. She never chooses the right colour or right clothes for herself. | RESPONSIBLE |
| | SENSATION |

II. Use the words in the box in their correct forms to complete the sentences.

direction	development	unconditionally	discussion	conducted
humour	seeing	participating	affected	appointments

1. Baron Pierre de Coubertin, who was the founder of modern Olympic Games, was not in favour of women _____ in the Games.

2. She has such a good sense of _____. She makes everyone laugh at work.
3. Surveys will be _____ to find out the changing demands of society.
4. He has a very good sense of _____. He never gets lost.
5. I don't have much sense of time. I always seem to be late for _____.
6. There will be an open _____ which will look at the main challenges and opportunities in the coming decades.
7. This _____ will allow a student to tailor his/her own learning.
8. I have the same vision of _____ us learn more from real life.
9. The changing economic role of women, which started in 1948, has greatly _____ the role of men.
10. The feudal system promotes male-dominated societies, where women obey men _____.

III. Give the correct form of the verbs in the passive of simple future.

1. The essays _____ (assess) by Hans de Wit, who is the President of the EAIE.
2. Students' academic performance _____ (not evaluate) through exams only.
3. Classes _____ (hold) also in places like restaurants or supermarkets.
4. The school's curriculum _____ (tailor) constantly to meet changes in society.
5. Women _____ (free) from most housework by high technology.
6. Not all the decisions in the family _____ (make) by men.
7. More flyovers _____ (build) to reduce traffic in the city.
8. We are staying at the Grand Hotel, which _____ (demolish) for a department store.

IV. Complete these sentences, put in *who*, *whose*, *which* or *that* only if you have to. Put a stick (✓) if the sentence is correct without a relative pronoun.

1. Mary, _____ sits next to me, is good at maths.
2. That's the man _____ Nelly gave the money to.
3. Is this the ring _____ you were looking for?
4. An orphan is a child _____ parents are dead.
5. Colin told me about his new job, _____ he's enjoying very much.
6. This morning I met somebody _____ I hadn't seen for ages.
7. My office, _____ is on the second floor of the building, is very small.
8. The people _____ we met at the party were very friendly.
9. Amy, _____ car had broken down, was in a very bad mood.
10. The man _____ repaired my car is a real expert.
11. The detective lost sight of the man _____ he was following.
12. The car _____ won the race looked very futuristic.
13. Is this the article _____ you were interested in?
14. That's Jack, _____ lives next door.
15. I thought I recognized the assistant _____ served us.

V. Rewrite the following sentences using relative clauses.

1. A friend of mine helped me to get a job. His father is the manager of a company.
→ _____
2. Mike gave half of the £50,000 he won to his parents.
→ _____
3. London was once the largest city in the world, but the population is now falling.
→ _____
4. A number of suggestions were made at the meeting, but most of them were not very practical.
→ _____
5. It is a medieval palace. The king hid in its tower during the civil war.
→ _____
6. I couldn't remember the number of my own car. This made the police suspicious.
→ _____
7. You sent me a present. Thank you very much for it.
→ _____
8. Dr Andy Todd is head of Downlands Hospital. He has criticized government plans to cut health funding.
→ _____
9. They are choosing the boys for the school's football team. All of them are under 9.
→ _____
10. I went to see my nephew Jimmy. I used to look after him when he was small.
→ _____

C. READING

I. Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

The (1)_____ of parental authority has changed. Today, no parent can (2)_____ their children's respect for granted: authority has to be earned. Several studies have shown the following problems.

Trust: A lot of young people say their parents don't trust them. Some of them have no privacy: their parents read all their emails, and enter their rooms (3)_____ knocking. All of these actions demonstrate lack of respect. (4)_____, these teenagers have little (5)_____ for their parents.

Communication: Hardly any teens discuss their problems with their parents. That's because very few teens feel their parents really listen to them. Instead, most parents tend to fire off an immediate (6)_____ to their kid's first sentence.

Freedom: Interestingly. Most rebels come from very authoritarian homes where kids have very little freedom. Teens need (7)_____ rules but they have to be clear and unchangeable. Also, if the mother and father don't agree about discipline, teens have less respect for (8)_____ parents. They also need a lot of support and a little freedom to take their own decisions. None of them enjoy just listening to adults.

Role models: Teens don't have much respect for their parents if (9)_____ of them actually does things (10)_____ they expect their children to do. Like everybody, teens appreciate people who practice what they reach.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|-------------|--------------|----------------|
| 1. A. provision | B. concept | C. applicant | D. breadwinner |
| 2. A take | B. joint | C. work | D. participate |
| 3 A. in | B. during | C. without | D. within |
| 4. A Consequently | B. Moreover | C. However | D. Therefore |
| 5. A. permission | B. cushion | C. courage | D. respect |
| 6. A. view | B. point | C. benefit | D. response |
| 7. A. less | B. more | C. fewer | D. little |
| 8. A. both | B. among | C. between | D. of |
| 9. A. either | B. both | C. neither | D. all |
| 10. A. who | B. that | C. whom | D. where |

II. Fill in the blank with a suitable word.

There has been a big change in the roles of men and women at home which in turn (1)_____ their feelings about their roles. However, it is important to highlight how this distribution of tasks and responsibilities can affect the relationships (2)_____ may end up in discords, or even divorces. In order to make a distinction between the past and the present times (3)_____ are provided: in the past, 75% (4)_____ care of all the washing and ironing. Husbands were involved in cleaning in only 17% and used their time at home on (5)_____ repairs. The care of children was mainly a task carried out by women. The little time that men spent with children usually (6)_____ the more enjoyable aspects of child care such as play and outings. However, this has (7)_____ because now women are the ones who spend less time at home (8)_____ to their jobs or their different activities. And nowadays, most husbands stay at home taking care of children and (9)_____ the cooking. As a consequence of the change in roles, women have become more liberal and think they can manage (10)_____ their own. Men, on the other hand, feel that their position and power in the family has been replaced by women.

III. Read the passage, and choose the correct answer A, B, C or D for each question.

Do you ever think about what schools will be like in the future? Many people think that students will study most regular classes such as maths, science and history online. Students will probably be able to these subjects anywhere using a computer. What will happen if students have problem with a subject? They might connect with a teacher through live videoconferencing. Expert teachers from learning centres will give students help wherever they live.

Students will still take classes in a school, too. Schools will become places for learning social skills. Teachers will guide students in learning how to work together in getting along with each other. They will help students with group projects both in and out of the classroom.

Volunteer work and working at local businesses will teach students important life skills about the world they live in. This will help students become an important part of their communities. Some experts say it will take five years for changes to begin in schools. Some say it will take longer. Most people agree, though, that computers will change education the way TVs and telephones changed life for people all over the world years before.

1. What is the main idea of the passage?
 - A. All classes will be taught online in the future.
 - B. Teachers will help students from home in the future.
 - C. Kids won't have to go to school in the future.
 - D. Computers will change education in the future.
2. What will happen if students meet difficulties with a subject?
 - A. They will telephone the teachers who are staying at the school to seek their help.
 - B. Schools will organise a live videoconference for teachers to help students with problems.
 - C. Teachers from learning centres will give them help through live videoconferencing.
 - D. They will meet their teachers in person for help with problems with the subject.
3. The main role of teachers in the future will be _____.
 - A. helping students with group projects
 - B. organising live videoconferences
 - C. providing students with knowledge
 - D. guiding students to learn computers
4. Students will still go to school to _____.
 - A. play with their friends
 - B. learn all subjects
 - C. learn social skills
 - D. use computers
5. Students will learn important life skills through _____.
 - A. working in international businesses
 - B. doing volunteer work
 - C. going to school every day
 - D. taking online classes

D. WRITING

I. Use a relative pronoun to combine each pair of sentences. Put in the commas where necessary.

1. Ann is very friendly. She lives next door.

2. The man is a famous actor. You met him at the party last night.

3. There are some words. They are very difficult to translate.

4. The sun provides us with heat and light. It is one of millions of stars in the universe.

5. Students will be punished. Their homework is late.

6. I was looking for a book this morning. I've found it now.

7. Is that the car? You want to buy it.

8. Sandra works in advertising. You were talking to her.

9. Lake Prespa is a lonely beautiful lake. It's on the north Greek border.

10. The little girl ate sweets the whole way. She sat next to me on the coach.

II. Write the information in brackets as a relative clause (defining or non-defining) in an appropriate place in the sentence.

1. Julia's father has just come back from a skiing holiday. (he is over 80)

→ _____

2. The problems faced by the company are being resolved. (I'll look at these in detail in a moment.)

→ _____

3. She was greatly influenced by her father. (she adored him)

→ _____

4. Parents are being asked to take part in the survey. (their children are between four or six)

→ _____

5. He isn't looking forward to the time. (he will have to leave at that time)

→ _____

6. The Roman coins are now on display in the National Museum. (a local farmer came across them in a field)

→ _____

7. He pointed to the stairs. (they led down to the cellar)

→ _____

8. These drugs have been withdrawn from sale. (they are used to treat stomach ulcers)

→ _____

9. The singer had to cancel her concert. (she was recovering from flu)

→ _____

10. We went to the Riverside Restaurant. (I once had lunch with Henry there)

→ _____

11. My aunt is now a manager of a department store. (her first job was filling shelves in a supermarket).

→ _____

12. John Graham's latest film is his first for more than five years. (the film is set in the north of Australia)

→ _____

13. The newspaper is owned by the Mears group. (its chairperson is Sir James Bex)

→ _____

14. The Master's course is no longer taught. (I took this course in 1990)

→ _____

15. The minister talked about the plans for tax reform. (he will reveal them next month)

→ _____

PART 3: TEST YOURSELF

I. Choose a word in each line that has different stress pattern.

- | | | | |
|------------------|----------------|-----------------|----------------|
| 1. A. forum | B. machine | C. changing | D. final |
| 2. A. advantage | B. experience | C. financial | D. strategy |
| 3. A. university | B. announce | C. contribution | D. academic |
| 4. A. apply | B. standard | C. service | D. masterpiece |
| 5. A. burden | B. breadwinner | C. uneconomic | D. tailor |

II. Choose the best one (A, B, C or D) to complete the sentence.

- The living standards of people in remote areas _____.
A. will be risen B. will arise C. will raise D. will be raised
- The system of water pipes has broken. The supply _____.
A. will have reduced B. will be reducing
C. will reduce D. will be reduced
- Women have been given _____ economic and political rights, as well as the right to choose their own husband.
A. equal B. able C. same D. alike
- Teachers in modern classrooms are _____ because their main task is to set goals and organise the learning process accordingly.
A. facilities B. directions C. decision-makers D. facilitators
- The Centre for Education Promotion and Empowerment for Women, _____ was established years ago, has worked to gain equality for women.
A. that B. it C. which D. what
- The people about _____ the novelist wrote were factory workers and their families.
A. that B. them C. who D. whom
- Although he did his best, he had to be _____ with third place in the competition.
A. pleasing B. satisfying C. content D. pleasant
- The traditional role of a husband is a _____ of safety and security
A. supply B. provider C. deliveryman D. supporter
- The sushi chef had to spend a few minutes _____ one of his orders to fits the dietary needs of his customers.
A. tailoring B. to tailor C. tailor D. tailored
- The United Nations, _____ was established in 1945, has over 200 members.
A. which B. that C. what D. it
- Companies have to be _____ to customer demand.
A. responding B. responsively C. responsible D. responsive
- Mr. Nam is the teacher in _____ we have much confidence.
A. that B. which C. whom D. him

13. Some _____ at an actual school, not a virtual one, will be required to help students develop appropriate social skills.
A. attention B. attendee C. attendant D. attendance
14. Before the rise of Islam in the early 600s, Arabs lived in a traditional, _____ society; men regarded women as their property.
A. man-dominated B. male-dominated
C. women-dominated D. female-dominated
15. Albert Einstein, _____ was such a brilliant scientist, introduced the theory of relativity.
A. that B. whose C. who D. whom
16. He showed the house _____ he was born and grew up.
A. in where B. in that C. which D. in which
17. A workshop can give children with _____ experience with computers.
A. practising B. hands-on C. skillful D. handy
18. He's still _____ dependent on his parents; he regularly receives money to _____ live from them.
A. financially B. financier C. finance D. financial
19. The threat of terrorism _____ soon.
A. will be finished B. will finish C. will remove D. will be removed
20. The national debt _____ in the near future.
A. will pay off B. will be paid off C. will pay D. will be paid

III. Use the words in the box in their correct forms to complete the sentences.

danger	guide	facilitate	depend	necessary
theory	apply	involve	participate	respond

- Our school will participate in a big campaign to save _____ species.
- The role of the modern teacher is to provide _____ to the student.
- It is good news that all the schools in our city are _____ to changes in the curriculum.
- Finishing high school at the age of 16 is _____ possible for many students.
- It is announced that successful _____ will receive notification within the week.
- A leg injury is preventing Peter from active _____ in the competition.
- Her children are very _____. They do all the shopping and cooking by themselves.
- In the future, students will not _____ go to school every day; they can stay at home and follow the lesson online.
- The modern mother will decrease her _____ in household work as it will be shared by her husband.
- Teachers should act as _____, enabling their students to study in the way that suits them best.

IV. Fill in the blank with a suitable word.

Men have played a significant (1)_____ in American society as the main breadwinner, and protector of the family. But the traditional role of men has slowly been

transferred to women. Society is changing (2)_____ women going to college, and gaining jobs. It may even happen in several years' time when women are given sole earning (3)_____ in American society as the main (4)_____ of the family. That is due in part to women gained working privileges (5)_____ to men in the 1970s.

Up until the 1970s, men were the traditional family breadwinners, while women stayed at home, raised the kids, made dinner every night, cleaned the house, and ran all of the errands. Men went to work every day, making enough money to buy a nice home, buy a new car every so often.

Once women were afforded the (6)_____ to work in the same jobs men once held, men's more traditional **foothold** in the workplace was loosened. Women were given bigger jobs with more responsibility, but women take jobs with major responsibly with (7)_____ pay than men.

The role of men in American society is (8)_____ with more women going to college, and obtaining careers; men are playing more untraditional roles at home.

Women are still giving birth to the kids, running errands, cleaning, making dinner. Young children, boys as well as girls, are being raised with dad at home (9)_____ care of the kids.

Millions of families are also raising their young with mom and dad (10)_____ all of the responsibilities. Today's role of men in American society is more of a shared role, with a more undefined role.

V. Read the following passage and choose the best option for each numbered blank.

In a traditional Korean society, women's roles were (1)_____ to the home. From a young age, women were taught the virtues of (2)_____ and endurance to prepare for their future roles as wife and mother. Women, in general, could not participate in society (3)_____ men did, and their role was limited to (4)_____ matters.

The situation began to change with the opening of the country to the outside world during the late 19th century. During this period modern schools were introduced, mostly by Western Christian missionaries. Some of these schools were founded with the specific (5)_____ of educating women. These educated women began to engage in the arts, teaching, religious work, and enlightening (6)_____ women. Women also took part in the independence movement against the Japanese occupation, and displayed no less vigor, determination, and courage than the men.

With the establishment of the Republic of Korea in 1948, women achieved (7)_____ rights for equal opportunities to pursue education, work, and public life. There is no doubt that the female labor force contributed significantly to the rapid economic growth that Korea achieved during the past three decades. An increasing number of women work in professional fields.

By 2004, among those graduating from elementary school, 99.5 percent of girls continued their education in middle school. The comparable figure for high school and university was 87.6 percent.

In (8)_____ of characteristics of the female labor force, by 2004, 22.6 percent of female employees were serving in professional (9)_____ managerial positions.

With an increasing number of women entering professional jobs, the government passed the "Equal Employment Act" in 1987 to prevent (10)_____ practices against female workers in regard to hiring and promotion opportunities.

- | | | | |
|----------------------|-------------------|------------------|-----------------|
| 1. A. dominated | B. separated | C. nominated | D. confined |
| 2. A. balance | B. subordination | C. practice | D. progress |
| 3. A. like | B. similar | C. as | D. same |
| 4. A. compare | B. considerate | C. contact | D. household |
| 5. A. responsibility | B. burden | C. task | D. goal |
| 6. A. obligated | B. other | C. allowed | D. release |
| 7. A. constitutional | B. design | C. equalize | D. share |
| 8. A. more | B. less | C. terms | D. a little |
| 9. A. or | B. herb | C. demonstration | D. colonization |
| 10. A. quarrel | B. discriminatory | C. debate | D. argue |

VI. Find and correct the mistakes.

- I enjoyed the book that you told me to read it.
A B C D
- That commentator, his name I have forgotten, is very well-known.
A B C D
- Amelia Earhart, that was one of the pioneers in aviation, attempted to fly the world in 1937,
A B C
but she and her plane mysteriously disappeared over the Pacific Ocean.
D
- Sunday is a day where we expect.
A B C D
- Have you ever been to Da Lat when my father has a lovely house?
A B C D
- Tomorrow I'm going to the station to meet my friend which comes to stay with us.
A B C D
- Last summer my family went to Vung Tau where my aunt is living there.
A B C D
- The stories what I've told you are all true.
A B C D
- There are not many people whose adapt to a new culture without feeling some disorientation
A B C D
at first.
- San Francisco, that is a beautiful city, has a population of six Million.
A B C D

VII. Choose the best answer.

- We are talking about the girl who used to be a Miss World.
A. The girl about whom we are talking used to be a Miss World.
B. We hardly know a girl who used to be a Miss World.
C. The girl who used to be a Miss World said that she knew you.
D. We know the girl who used to be a Miss World.

2. He told her about the book. He liked it best.
 - A. He told her about the book which he liked it best.
 - B. He told her about the book which he liked best.
 - C. He told her about the book whom he liked best.
 - D. He told her about the book whose he liked best
3. The old man is working in this factory. I borrowed his bicycle yesterday.
 - A. The old man is working in this factory which I borrowed his bicycle yesterday.
 - B. The old man whom is working in this factory I borrowed his bicycle yesterday.
 - C. The old man whom I borrowed his bicycle yesterday is working in this factory.
 - D. The old man whose bicycle I borrowed yesterday is working in this factory.
3. This is my opinion. You can do nothing to change it.
 - A. You can do nothing to change it my mind.
 - B. There's nothing you can do to change my mind.
 - C. There's nothing can be done except changing my mind.
 - D. You can do everything to change it my mind.
5. The man _____, is the secretary.
 - A. which you have just spoken
 - B. whose you have just spoken
 - C. to whom you have just spoken
 - D. to who you have just spoken
6. It is the village where you _____, isn't it ?

A. used to living	B. used to live
C. use to live	D. use living
7. The police have caught the man _____.

A. who stole my motorbike.	B. whose stole my motorbike.
C. whom stole my motorbike.	D. which stole my motorbike.
8. Colin told me about his new job, _____ very much.

A. that he's enjoying	B. he's enjoying
C. which he's enjoying	D. he's enjoying it
9. The man is my teacher. I am grateful to him.
 - A. The man whom I grateful to him is my teacher.
 - B. The man whom I am grateful to is my teacher.
 - C. The man is my teacher who I am grateful.
 - D. The man to him I am grateful is my teacher.
10. Ngoc is friendly. We are talking about her.
 - A. Ngoc, we are talking about, is friendly.
 - B. Ngoc, whom we are talking about is friendly
 - C. Ngoc, about her we are talking, is friendly.
 - D. Ngoc, about whom we are talking, is friendly

VIII. Write all the pronouns possible to complete each sentence. Write Ø if the sentence is correct without adding a pronoun.

1. We talk about the party _____ Sarah wants to organise for my birthday.
2. To get to Frank's house, take the main road _____ bypasses the village.
3. The paintings _____ Mr Flowers has in his house are worth around £100,000.
4. Mrs Richmond, _____ is 42, has three children.
5. Don is a friend _____ I stayed with in Australia.
6. She was probably the hardest working student _____ I've ever taught.
7. Stevenson is an architect _____ designs have won international praise.
8. The Roman coins, _____ a local farmer came across in a field, are now displayed in the National Museum.
9. Dorothy said something _____ I couldn't hear clearly.
10. There was a little _____ we could do to help her.
11. He received a low mark for his essay, _____ was only one page long.
12. We need to learn from companies _____ trading is healthier than our own.
13. Professor Johnson, _____ I have long admired, is visiting the University next week.
14. The man _____ I introduced to you last night may be the next president of the university.
15. These walls are all _____ remain of the city.

IX. Use a relative pronoun to combine each pair of sentences. Put in the commas where necessary.

1. Is Zedco a company? It was taken over last year.

2. Felix Reeve is a journalist. His tape recorder was stolen.

3. This famous picture is worth thousands of pounds. It was damaged during the war.

4. I don't know the name of the woman. I spoke to her on the phone.

5. We often go to visit our friends in Bristol. It is only 30 miles away.

6. This is Mr. Carter. I was telling you about him.

7. They've captured all the animals. They escaped from the zoo.

8. A scientist has won the Nobel Prize. He discovered a new planet.

9. The river is the Wye. It flows through Hereford.

10. We climbed to the top of the tower. We had a beautiful view from there.

Unit
12

MY FUTURE CAREER

PART 1: GRAMMAR REVIEW

I. MỆNH ĐỀ CHỈ SỰ NHƯỢNG BỘ (CLAUSE OF CONCESSION): MẶC DÙ

Although	+ S ₁ + V ₁ + O, S ₂ + V + O
Though	
Even though	
Much as	
Despite	the fact that
In spite of	
Despite ...	cụm N ... , S ₂ + V ₂ + O
In spite of	
Regardless of	
Notwithstanding	
	Ving

Ex: **Although** it rained cats and dogs, we went to school.

=> **Despite** raining cats and dogs, we went to school.

II. VERB FORM (DẠNG CỦA ĐỘNG TỪ)

1. VERB + GERUNDS (Ving):

* Các động từ theo sau giới từ đều chia ở V_ing:

admit = thừa nhận

involve = bao gồm

avoid = tránh

loathe = kinh tởm

anticipate = lường trước

mind = phiền

appreciate = tán thán

miss = hụt, lỡ

complete = hoàn thành

mention = đề cập

consider = xem xét

prevent = ngăn ngừa

deny = từ chối

postpone = hoãn lại

detest = ghét

practice = thực hành

discuss = thảo luận

resent = căm thù

defend = bảo vệ

resist = kháng cự

delay = trì hoãn

recall = gợi nhớ

despise = khinh thường

recollect = nhớ ra

enjoy = thích thú

report = báo cáo, tường trình

escape = thoát được

resume = cho rằng

excuse = thứ lỗi

fancy = đam mê

forgive = tha thứ

can't help = không thể không

imagine = tưởng tượng

risk = liều lĩnh

can't see = không hiểu

tolerate = tha thứ, chịu đựng

understand = hiểu

2. VERB + To V-infinitives:

→ V + to V

→ V + O + to V

afford = đủ điều kiện

agree = đồng ý

appear = hóa ra; hình như

arrange = sắp xếp

ask = yêu cầu

beg = van nài

choose = chọn lựa

challenge = thách thức

claim = thỉnh cầu

decide = quyết định

expect = mong đợi

fail = quên; thất bại

force = ép buộc

happen = tình cờ

hesitate = ngại ngùng

hope = hy vọng

instruct = chỉ dẫn

invite = mời

learn = học hành

manage = xoay xở

offer = tỏ ý muốn

order = ra lệnh

prepare = chuẩn bị

pretend = giả bộ

promise = hứa

persuade = thuyết phục

plan = dự định

refuse = từ chối

remind = nhắc nhở

swear = thề thốt

seem = dường như

threaten = cảnh báo; đe dọa

tell = bảo; ra lệnh

take = phải, yêu cầu

tend = có khuynh hướng

want = cần phải

wish = mong muốn

would like = muốn

3. VERB + sb + V-infinitives:

- let: để, cho phép

- make: buộc, bắt

- get: nhờ, thuyết phục

- had better: tốt hơn nên

- help: giúp đỡ

- have: nhờ, yêu cầu

- would rather: thích hơn

- modal verbs: động từ khuyết thiếu

4. VERB (GIÁC QUAN) + OBJECT + V/ V-ing:

- see

- notice

- watch

- look at

- observe

- hear

- listen to

- feel

- smell

- catch

- find

* V-inf: nếu nghe/thấy toàn bộ hành động từ đầu đến cuối

Ex: I saw my friend **run** down the street.

* V-ing: nếu nghe/thấy 1 phần hành động đang xảy ra.

Ex: I saw my friend **running** down the street.

5. VERB + to V/ V-ing (KHÔNG KHÁC NHAU VỀ NGHĨA)

- | | | | |
|----------|----------|-------------|-------------|
| - intend | - advise | - encourage | - allow |
| - forbid | - permit | - admit | - recommend |

* Nếu sau những từ trên **không** có tân ngữ thì có thể dùng **V-ing**

* Nếu sau những từ trên **có** tân ngữ thì buộc phải dùng **to V**

- | | | | |
|---------|---------|---------------|--------------|
| - begin | - start | - continue | - like |
| - love | - hate | - can't stand | - can't bear |

* Phải dùng **START/BEGIN** với “**to V**” trong 2 trường hợp sau:

- Khi động từ **START/BEGIN** được dùng ở **hình thức tiếp diễn**.
When I got off the train, it was *beginning/starting to rain*.
- Theo sau động từ **START/BEGIN** là 2 động từ **UNDERSTAND, REALIZE**.
She began **to understand/ to realize** what he wanted.

6. VERB + to V/ V-ing: (KHÁC NHAU VỀ NGHĨA)

- | | |
|---|--|
| - Stop to V : dừng lại để làm gì. | - Try to V : cố gắng làm điều gì. |
| V_ing : chấm dứt 1 việc gì. | V_ing : thử làm gì xem kết quả ra sao. |
| - Prefer to V : thích làm 1 việc gì đó. | - Like to V : muốn, quen làm điều gì. |
| V_ing : thích việc gì đó. | V_ing : thích làm điều gì. |
| - Need to V : cần phải làm gì (chủ động). | - Agree to V : đồng ý làm gì đó. |
| V_ing : cần phải được làm gì (bị động) | V_ing : đồng ý chuyện gì đó. |
| - Mean to V : có ý định/kế hoạch. | - Propose to V : có ý định/ kế hoạch |
| V_ing : yêu cầu. | V_ing : gợi ý/ đề nghị. |
| - Remember/regret/forget + to V : nhớ/ tiếc/ quên làm gì. | |
| Ving : nhớ/ tiếc/ quên đã làm gì (trong quá khứ) | |

7. VERB + OBJECT + to V:

- | | |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------|
| - advise: khuyên | - instruct: dạy, chỉ thị |
| - allow: cho phép | - invite: mời |
| - ask: yêu cầu | - need: cần |
| - beg: van xin | - order: ra lệnh |
| - cause: gây, làm cho | - permit: cho phép |
| - challenge: thách thức | - persuade: thuyết phục |
| - convince: thuyết phục | - remind: nhắc nhở |
| - dare: thách | - require: đòi hỏi/ yêu cầu |
| - encourage: khuyến khích | - teach: dạy |
| - expect: mong | - tell: bảo, nói |

- forbid: cấm
- force: buộc
- hire: thuê

- urge: thúc giục
- want: muốn
- warn: cảnh báo

8. CÁC DẠNG CỦA “to V” VÀ V-ing”

* <u>to V</u>:	V + NOT + TO V(INF)	=> We decided not to buy a car.
	V + TO BE + V_ING	=> We pretended to be sleeping.
	V + TO HAVE + PP	=> You seem to have lost weight.
	V + TO BE + PP	=> We expect to be invited to the party.
	V + TO HAVE BEEN + PP	=> Jane is lucky now to have been given a scholarship last month by her govern.
* <u>V ing</u>:	V + NOT + V_ING	=> I enjoy not being at home.
	V + HAVING + PP	=> I appreciate now having had opportunity to meet the king yesterday.
	V + BEING + PP	=> I appreciated being invited to your home.
	V + HAVING BEEN + PP	=> I appreciate having told the news.

PART 2: PRACTICE

A. PHONETICS AND PHONOLOGY

I. Choose a word in each line that has different stress pattern.

- | | | | |
|--------------------|-----------------|---------------|---------------|
| 1. A. alternative | B. academic | C. variety | D. biologist |
| 2. A. architecture | B. development | C. vocational | D. compulsory |
| 3. A. injection | B. professional | C. management | D. vocational |
| 4. A. researcher | B. leisure | C. meaningful | D. colleague |
| 5. A. sympathetic | B. dynamic | C. consider | D. adaptable |

II. Find the word which has a different sound in the underlined part.

- | | | | |
|---------------------------|-----------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. A. vi <u>s</u> ion | B. se <u>n</u> se | C. ri <u>n</u> seless | D. ho <u>s</u> ekeeper |
| 2. A. ca <u>r</u> eer | B. a <u>p</u> plied | C. a <u>l</u> ternative | D. a <u>p</u> proach |
| 3. A. tele <u>s</u> copes | B. uni <u>v</u> erse | C. pro <u>f</u> ession | D. co <u>n</u> tent |
| 4. A. ca <u>l</u> m | B. ski <u>l</u> lful | C. lo <u>g</u> ical | D. cu <u>l</u> tivation |
| 5. A. me <u>c</u> hanic | B. te <u>c</u> hnical | C. pro <u>f</u> essional | D. em <u>p</u> athetic |

B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

I. Here is a job interview. Fill the given sentences to complete the conversation.

- A. I can see from your CV that you like meeting people and enjoy being sociable.
- B. Good afternoon.
- C. Yes, and thank you very much.

D. Will you be able to cope with this and your schoolwork as well?

E. Did you find our offices all right?

F. You won't be meeting people in person, but only over the phone.

Interviewer: _____(1)

Interviewee: Good afternoon.

Interviewer: Please sit down. _____(2)

Interviewee: Yes, with no difficulty. I've passed this building several times before.

Interviewer: Right. Well, _____(3)

Interviewee: Yes, I'm a very outgoing sort of person and I'm not afraid to take the initiative, although my friends say I tend to talk too much.

Interviewer: Well, that's exactly the kind of person we need. Why do you think you will be good at this job, though? _____(4)

Interviewee: I think I have a good telephone voice, and I am very confident on the phone. I've also some experience in sales, as you can see from my CV. I think I would find this work very interesting, and it will give me some good work experience.

Interviewer: Okay. As you know we need someone for at least three hours, three evenings a week. _____(5)

James: I'm confident that I can do that.

Interviewer: Right, then. Shall we give you a trial period of say ... two weeks? If you'd like to come with me I'll introduce you to my floor manager who will show you the ropes.

James: _____(6)

Your answer:

1.	2.	3.	4.	5.	6.
----	----	----	----	----	----

II. Match the jobs with the job description.

1. This person drives a taxi for a living.

A. cook B. doctor C. taxi driver D. waiter

2. This person teaches students in a high school for a living.

A. student B. dentist C. teacher D. bus driver

3. This person sings songs for a living.

A. singer B. hairdresser C. waiter D. truck driver

4. This person drives a truck for a living.

A. nurse B. doctor C. postal worker D. truck driver

5. This person cooks food in a restaurant for a living.

A. chef B. police officer C. student D. teacher

6. This person works at the police station and helps to fight crime and prevent it.

A. nurse B. student C. singer D. policeman

7. This person serves food in a restaurant or a cafe for a living.

A. waiter B. student C. singer D. chef

8. This person studies at school and sometimes college and university.
A. truck driver B. singer C. student D. dentist
9. This person takes care of teeth for a living.
A. hotel worker B. chef C. dentist D. fire fighter
10. This person works in a hospital and treats sick people for a living.
A. doctor B. teacher C. student D. truck driver

III. Where does the boss work? Find the correct phrase on the right.

A	B
1. A captain works in	a. school
2. A chairman works in	b. TV series
3. A head-master works in	c. newspaper
4. A editor works for	d. town
5. A managing director works in	e. shop
6. A producer works in	f. committee
7. A manager works in	g. ship
8. A mayor works in	h. monastery
9. A umpire works in	i. company
10. A abbot works in	j. tennis match

Your answers:

1.	2.	3.	4.	5.
6.	7.	8.	9.	10.

IV. With the job description to choose the best answer A, B or C.

1. This person flies planes.
A. driver B. pilot C. plane man
2. This person works in a school.
A. chef B. teacher C. researcher
3. This person plays football.
A. footballer B. footballist C. footballman
4. This person works in a restaurant with the public.
A. doctor B. dietician C. waiter
5. This person works in a hospital and does surgery.
A. nurse B. psychologist C. surgeon
6. This person writes for a newspaper.
A. journalist B. author C. novelist

7. This person speaks many languages.
A. teacher B. commentator C. interpreter
8. This person acts in films.
A. producer B. actor C. director
9. This person owns a lot of animals.
A. zooman B. farmer C. fisherman
10. This person paints pictures.
A. decorator B. cameraman C. artist

V. Complete the sentences using the correct form (ing-form or to-infinitive of the verb in brackets)

1. Reliable friends are always there for you. They never fail (**help**)_____ you.
2. Why don't you stop (**work**)_____ and take a rest?
3. I was a bit lazy this time, but I promise (**study**)_____ harder next time.
4. If you want a quiet holiday, you should avoid (**go**)_____ to the coast in summer.
5. When we told him a plan, he agreed (**join**)_____ our team.
6. John missed (**have**)_____ dinner with his old school mates.
7. This is a very badly organized project. I will never consider (**take**)_____ part in it.
8. I can't stand my boss. I have decided (**look**)_____ for another job.
9. He only wants privacy. He can't understand people (**ask**)_____ him personal questions.
10. Do you ever regret (**not study**)_____ at university, Peter?

VI. The word in brackets at the end of each of the following sentences can be used to form a word that fits suitably in the blank.

- | | |
|---|-------------------|
| 1. Police _____ support laws through the detection, prevention and investigation of crime. | OFFICE |
| 2. _____ help to advance an understanding of how diet affects the health and well-being of people and animals. | NUTRITIOUS |
| 3. _____ <i>school teachers</i> educate children between the ages of 11 and 18 in a national curriculum subject area. | SECOND |
| 4. _____ provide financial advice to clients that range from multinational organisations and governmental bodies to small independent businesses. | ACCOUNT |
| 5. _____ manage learning resources while keeping the library users' needs in mind. | LIBRARY |
| 6. _____ design buildings that are functional, safe, and beautiful. | ARCHITECT |
| 7. <i>Multimedia</i> _____ are responsible for combining text with sounds, pictures, video clips, virtual reality and other forms. | PROGRAMMER |
| 8. <i>Tour</i> _____ responsible for organising and preparing holiday tours. | OPERATE |

- | | |
|--|--|
| 9. _____ study past human activity by excavating, dating and interpreting objects and sites of historical interest. | ARCHAEOLOGY

JOURNAL |
| 10. _____ write news stories, and articles for use on television and radio or within magazines, journals and newspapers. | |

VII. Complete the sentences using the correct form (ing-form or to-infinitive of the verb in brackets)

1. The horses struggled (**pull**) _____ the wagon out of the mud.
2. Anita demanded (**know**) _____ why she had been fired.
3. My skin can't tolerate (**be**) _____ in the sun all day I get sunburned easily.
4. I avoided (**tell**) _____ Mary the truth because I knew she would be angry.
5. Fred Washington claims (**be**) _____ a descendant of George Washington.
6. Mr. Kwan broke the antique vase. I'm sure he didn't mean (**do**) _____ it.
7. I urged Omar (**return**) _____ to school and (**finish**) _____ his education.
8. Mrs. Freeman can't help (**worry**) _____ about her children.
9. Children I forbid you (**play**) _____ in the street. There's too much traffic.
10. My little cousin is a blabbermouth! He can't resist (**tell**) _____ everyone my secret.

VIII. Join each pair of sentences into one, beginning with the words provided.

1. Although he is wealthy, he is not spoiled. (**Despite**)

2. Despite a good salary, he was unhappy in his job. (**Though**)

3. In spite of the high prices, my roommates go to the movies every Saturday. (**Although**)

4. Even though she had a poor memory, she told interesting stories to the children. (**Despite**)

5. In spite of their poverty, they are very generous. (**Although**)

6. .Though she has been absent frequently, he has managed to pass the test. (**In spite of**)

7. In spite of Lee's Sadness at losing the contest, she managed to smile. (**Although**)

8. My friend ate the chocolate cake even though she was on a diet. (**Despite**)

9. In spite of a headache, he enjoyed the film. (**Although**)

10. My sister will take a plane even though she dislikes flying. (**In spite of**)

C. READING**I. Read the text and then answer the questions below.**

My name is Marian and I am a flight attendant. Providing the passengers what they need and making sure they are comfortable are my main duties. My job is exciting. I visit many countries every year and never know where I'll be in the next week. Of course it's also tiring, and I can't spend the weekends or holidays with my family but it's worth it.

I wanted to be a flight attendant since I was a little girl, so I did everything I was advised to, in order to get the job I always wanted. I think it's very important to prepare yourself to do what you dream on, and if you are really concerned on learning and you take it seriously, you will probably get what you want.

► Questions:

1. What does Marian do for a living?

2. What are Marian's main duties at work?

3. According to her, what's advantage of being a flight attendant?

4. What does she think is necessary to get what you want?

II. Read the text again and then decide whether the following statement is True (T) or False (F).

No.	Statement	True (T)	False (F)
1.	Marian is a pilot.		
2.	Marian likes her job.		
3.	Marian's main duties at work are taking care of the passengers and make them feel comfortable.		
4.	She travels a lot.		
5.	She often spends the weekend with her family and friends.		
6.	She wanted to be a flight attendant since she was in college.		
7.	If you want something, you have to be concerned on learning and take it seriously.		
8.	Marian didn't listen to the advices she got.		
9.	Marian has no idea where she's going to travel to next week.		
10.	She's tired of her job as a flight attendant.		

III. Read the following text and choose the best answer A, B, C or D.

There are as many kinds of careers as there are people. They vary greatly in the type of work involved and in the ways they influence a person's life. The kind of career you have can affect your life in many ways. For example, it can determine where you live and the friends you make. It can reflect how much education you have and can determine the amount of money you earn. Your career can also affect the way you feel about yourself and the way other people act toward you. By making wise decisions concerning your career, you can help yourself build the life you want. To make wise decisions and plans, you need as much information as possible. The more you know about yourself and career opportunities, the better able you will be to choose a satisfying career. People differ in what they want from a career. Many people desire a high income. Some hope for fame. Others want adventure. Still others want to serve people and make the world a better place. Before you begin to explore career fields, you should determine your values, your interests, and your aptitudes (abilities). Most people are happiest in jobs that fit their values, interests and aptitudes. Each person has many values, which vary in strength. For example, money is the strongest value for some people – that is, wealth is more important to them than anything else. As a result, they focus their thoughts, behavior, and emotions on the goal of earning a high income. Other values include devotion to religion, taking risks, spending time with family, and helping others. People should understand their values prior to making a career decision. You can develop an understanding of your values by asking yourself what is most important to you and by examining your beliefs. For example, is it important to you to work as a member of a team? Or would you rather be in charge or work alone? If working alone or being in charge is important to you, independence is probably one of your primary values.

1. There are as many kinds of careers as _____.
A. they are needed
B. there are people
C. decisions and plans
D. opportunities
2. The kind of career you have can _____.
A. influence your interests
B. change your life completely
C. affect your life in many ways
D. influence your aptitudes
3. To make wise career decisions and plans you need _____.
A. a wise advice
B. as much information as possible
C. a lot of money
D. a lot of friends
4. The money you know about yourself and career opportunities _____.
A. the better able you will be to choose a satisfying career
B. the better choice you will do
C. the better friend you make
D. the better education you get
5. Most people are happiest in jobs that _____.
A. fit their financial well-being
B. fit their values, interests and aptitudes
C. fit their devotion to religion
D. fit their goal of earning a high income
6. Each person has many values, which vary _____.
A. in aptitudes
B. in meanings
C. in interests
D. in strength

7. People should understand their values prior _____.
 A. to asking some pieces of advice B. to spending time with family
 C. to taking risks D. to making a career decision
8. You can develop an understanding of your values by _____.
 A. examining your parents and friends B. examining your beliefs
 C. examining your interests D. examining your abilities
9. The kind of career can determine _____.
 A. where you live and the friends you make
 B. your future notoriety
 C. your interests
 D. your values
10. The kind of career can reflect _____.
 A. how much information you have B. how much education you have
 C. how much money D. how much time you have

D. WRITING

I. Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it is as similar as possible in meaning to the original sentences. Use the word given and other words as necessary. Do not change the form of the given word.

1. Hung was seriously advised by his teacher, but he insisted on disturbing the class.
 ➔ In spite _____
2. Miss Diep tried several times, but she couldn't find a taxi.
 ➔ Despite _____
3. Although he felt tired, he stayed up to keep us company.
 ➔ In spite _____
4. Mr. Vinh would like more holidays. He doesn't mind going to school.
 ➔ Despite _____
5. The work was hard and the wages were low. He decided to the job.
 ➔ In spite _____
6. They didn't have much time, however they came to visit us.
 ➔ Despite _____
7. He is too old, but he still does his gymnastics every morning.
 ➔ In spite _____
8. Trang Anh is the boss. She works as hard as her employees.
 ➔ Despite _____
9. He has health problems. He is always smiling.
 ➔ In spite _____
10. Kieu Anh got good marks. The exam was difficult.
 ➔ Despite _____

II. Write complete sentences, using the words/ phrases given in their correct forms. You can add some more necessary words, but you have to use all the words given.

1. He/ not promoted/ spite of/ efforts.

=> _____

2. The boss/ denied/ bully/ new employee.

=> _____

3. Students/ need/ vocational skills/ before they enter/ world of work.

=> _____

4. She/ a dynamic businesswoman. /She/ so/ energy and focus.

=> _____

5. He/ such/ empathetic nurse/ the patients/ love him.

=> _____

6. I feel/ we have too/ academic subjects/ not enough time/ physical education.

=> _____

7. As/ opera singer, / he has/ opportunities perform/ Grand Theatre.

=> _____

8. Work/ as architects, / they design/ build.

=> _____

9. They/ won/ big contracts./ They/ successful businesswomen / businessmen.

=> _____

10. Work/ skilled craftsmen/ craftswomen,/ I learnt/ lot about/ art form.

=> _____

PART 3: TEST YOURSELF

I. Choose a word in each line that has different stress pattern.

- | | | | |
|------------------|----------------|----------------|------------------|
| 1. A. economical | B. cultivation | C. disappoint | D. administrator |
| 2. A. career | B. practical | C. flextime | D. service |
| 3. A. understand | B. bundle | C. customer | D. burning |
| 4. A. education | B. educational | C. opportunity | D. certificate |
| 5. A. architect | B. mechanic | C. channel | D. chemistry |

II. Choose the best one (A, B, C or D) to complete the sentence.

- I am trying _____ money to pay for a trip with my best friends in the next summer holiday.
A. save B. to save C. to be saved D. saving
- The director is an important man behind the _____ in the play.
A. curtain B. closed doors C. scenes D. wheel
- If you burn the _____ oil night after night, you'll probably become ill.
A. morning B. afternoon C. evening D. midnight

4. Although many people have some interest in history, few of them decide to become _____.
A. politics B. historians C. scientists D. researcher
5. Linda can't stand _____ in a room with all of the windows closed.
A. sleep B. sleeping C. slept D. being slept
6. That artist painted a beautiful painting of a rhino _____ the fact that he has never seen one.
A. although B. despite C. because D. due to
7. My parents have _____ me to focus on social sciences and humanities.
A. tried B. encouraged C. managed D. make
8. Would you mind _____ the door?
A. open B. to open C. opening D. opened
9. The number of _____ in the company has trebled over the past decade.
A. employers B. employees C. employments D. unemployment
10. His explanation about why he became a biologist did not satisfy my _____ at all.
A. willing B. curiosity C. knowledge D. qualities
11. What kind of career _____ do you think is most suitable for you when you've just graduated from college?
A. way B. ladder C. path D. break
12. These plants are all easily _____ to colder climates.
A. adaptable B. available C. accessible D. capable
13. You should give up _____ or you will die of cancer.
A. smoke B. to smoke C. smoking D. smoked
14. I hope they take her age into _____ when they judge her work.
A. account B. note C. thinking D. attention
15. Ann was very surprised to find the door unlocked. She remembered _____ it before she left.
A. to lock B. locking C. lock D. she locks
16. My sister is a(n) _____ and she wants to become a fashion designer.
A. romantic B. artistic C. optimistic D. pessimistic
17. We need to get a good job to _____ a decent living
A. spend B. earn C. do D. bring
18. The staff discussed _____ the next meeting until next week.
A. postponing B. to postpone C. postpone D. to postponing
19. The possible career paths in education can be to become teachers, education _____ or curriculum developers.
A. leaders B. administrators C. managers D. businessman
20. You can make _____ by starting up your own business.
A. a difference B. a fuss C. headway D. a bundle
21. The assignment was very lengthy so she was forced to burn the _____ to get it done on time.
A. lamp B. oil C. midnight lamp D. midnight oil

22. The driver stopped _____ a coffee because he felt sleepy.
A. have B. to have C. having D. had
23. You should choose a job that is based on your _____ and your likes.
A. levels B. abilities C. rates D. career
24. She is a(n) _____ social worker who soon realized that the single mother was at her breaking point.
A. sympathy B. empathy C. apathetic D. synthetic
25. Evaluation of students' progress in English is _____ throughout the session.
A. ongoing B. existing C. oncoming D. developing
26. Almost everyone doesn't trust David _____ his friendliness.
A. due to B. in spite C. in case D. despite
27. You will never get a good job if you don't have any _____.
A. measures B. qualifications C. levels D. degrees
28. Recent advances in _____ science mean that many fatal diseases can now be cured.
A. medicine B. medical C. hospital D. surgery
29. I suggest _____ some more mathematical puzzles.
A. do B. to do C. doing D. done
30. Having finished _____ the reading report, I began to listen to music.
A. to write B. to have written C. writing D. written

III. Fill in the blank with suitable words.

An interview is never as (1) _____ as your fears. For some (2) _____, people imagine the interviewer is going to focus on every tiny mistake they make. In truth, the interviewer is as keen for the meeting to go well as you are. It is what makes his or her job (3) _____.

The secret of a good interview is preparing for it. What you wear is very important because it (4) _____ the first impression. So (5) _____ neatly, but comfortably. Make sure that you can deal with anything you are asked. Remember to prepare for questions that are certain to (6) _____.

Answer the questions fully and precisely. For instance, if one of your interests is reading, be prepared to (7) _____ about the sort of books you like. However, do not learn all your answers off by (8) _____. The interviewer wants to meet a human (9) _____, not a robot. (10) _____ the fact that a job interview is so important, you should feel relaxed in order to succeed.

IV. Read the following passage and choose the best option for each numbered blank.

A career used to be understood as a single (1) _____ that people did to earn a living. However, in the changing world of work, nowadays people have to keep learning and be responsible for building their future. Therefore, a career is now considered more than a job. Rather, it is an (2) _____ process of learning and development of skills and (3) _____.

Choosing a career (4) _____ is hard - you have to consider many things. Firstly, you should consider what you like, what is most important to you, what you are good at and who is there to help you. For example, you may care (5) _____ about earning as much money as

possible or you may want to experience job (6)_____, or make a difference to society. Then, you should (7)_____ account education and learning styles. You may want to follow an academic route of high school, then college or university. (8)_____, you may opt for vocational training where you learn skills which can be applied directly to a job. Thirdly, you should do your own research to explore possible career paths. For instance, career paths in education include teaching, (9)_____ development, research or administration. Finally, speak to people. Your parents, your teachers, and even your (10)_____ can give you good advice.

- | | | | |
|------------------|--------------|------------------|------------------|
| 1. A. task | B. emission | C. occupation | D. job |
| 2. A. outgoing | B. ongoing | C. easy going | D. go out |
| 3. A. experiment | B. interest | C. experience | D. passion |
| 4. A. park | B. bath | C. line | D. path |
| 5. A. mostly | B. nearly | C. hardly | D. rarely |
| 6. A. disappoint | B. courage | C. satisfaction | D. point |
| 7. A. take over | B. take into | C. take up | D. take on |
| 8. A. Specially | B. Luckily | C. Considerately | D. Alternatively |
| 9. A. curriculum | B. programme | C. vacant | D. universe |
| 10. A. spells | B. cereals | C. peers | D. parallels |

V. Complete the sentences with the correct form, gerund or infinitive, of the words in parentheses.

- He wore glasses _____(avoid) _____(be) recognized.
- Before (give)_____ evidence you must swear (speak)_____ the truth.
- I tried (persuade)_____ him (agree)_____ with your proposal.
- Your windows need (clean)_____. Would you like me (do)_____ them for you.
- Would you mind (shut)_____ the window? I hate (sit)_____ in a draught.
- I can't help (sneeze)_____; I caught a cold yesterday because of (sit)_____ in a draught.
- Stop (talk)_____; I am trying (finish)_____ a letter.
- His doctor advised him (give)_____ up (jog)_____.
- My watch keeps (stop)_____.
- People used (make)_____ fire by (rub)_____ two sticks together.

VI. Find ONE mistake in each of the following sentences and correct it.

- If you don't want to be late for work again, try to go to bed earlier.
A B C D
- She was awarded the employee of the year though her young age.
A B C D
- Although Vinh will have a very busy day tomorrow, he has arranged meeting him at 4
A B C D
o'clock.

4. In spite of not being a professional dancer. Linda practices dancing every day.

A

B

C

D

5. My mother always suggests to read the book before seeing the film.

A

B

C

D

VII. Complete the second sentence in each pair so that it has similar meaning to the first sentence.

1. Mr Thuan was injured. He managed to finish the race.

➔ Despite _____

2. Although he had no qualifications for it, he got the job.

➔ In spite _____

3. I didn't like the CD you have recommended me, but I bought it all the same.

➔ Although _____

4. Thuy went to school. She was ill.

➔ In spite _____

5. We couldn't win the match. We played well.

➔ Despite _____

6. It rained a lot. We enjoyed our holiday.

➔ In spite _____

7. I told her all the truth. However she didn't believe me.

➔ In spite _____

8. They didn't play well, but they won the game.

➔ Despite _____

9. He didn't get the job. He had all the necessary qualifications.

➔ In spite _____

10. Although the shirts are very expensive, people buy them because they are trendy.

➔ _____

VIII. Write complete sentences, using the words/ phrases given in their correct forms. You can add some more necessary words, but you have to use all the words given.

1. The boy finally managed/ deal/ his peers/ the vocational school.

=> _____

2. She attempted/ cooperate/ the others/ team/ finish the work.

=> _____

3. He has a talent/ fixing things,/ he/ an excellent mechanic.

=> _____

4. My father/ running/ pharmacy./ He/ pharmacist.

=> _____

5. He wants/ become/ fashion designer./ He/ very interested/ fashion and design.

=> _____

6. I took/ account the pay/ the working conditions/ before I decided/ take the job.

=> _____

7. He/ become/ professional footballer/ the local football team.

=> _____

8. He/ burnt the midnight oil/ a long time so it's fair if he gets an A/ his final exam.

=> _____

9. He a professional singer/ his beautiful voice, he/ make a bundle.

=> _____

10. She dreams/ becoming/ physicist/ she really likes physics.

=> _____

THE SECOND TERM TEST

I. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined.

1. A. orchid B. massive C. exotic D. stir
2. A. emergency B. prefere C. versatele D. operate
3. A. punctual B. fluent C. marinate D. drainu
4. A. mape B. stapele C. massive D. breathtaking
5. A. persuasion B. extension C. confusion D. explosion

II. Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.

1. A. versatile B. operate C. common D. variety
2. A. dominated B. architecture C. parabolic D. empathy
3. A. magnificence B. stimulating C. imperial D. simplicity
4. A. habitable B. business C. consequently D. externally
5. A. affordable B. ingredient C. destination D. derivative

III. Choose the best one (A, B, C or D) to complete the sentence or replace the underlined word.

1. I have a _____ that within 5 years from today, there shall be a significant improvement in the numbers of women leaders at various levels.
A. vision B. scene C. sight D. decision
2. There are several reasons _____ Adam is not chosen for the school football team.
A. for what B. explaining C. form then D. why
3. In the world today people _____ around 2,700 different languages.
A. converse B. communicate C. speak D. say
4. They didn't stop _____ until 11.30 pm when there was a power cut.
A. to sing and dancing B. singing and dance
C. singing and dancing D. to sing and dance
5. The _____ ingredient in every meal of Vietnamese people is fish sauce.
A. active B. essential C. particular D. natural
6. My sister enjoys travelling round different countries. She is going on a _____ Scotland this summer.
A. tour B. travel C. journey D. voyage
7. She really remembers _____ her daughter _____ her a bar of soap.
A. telling – to buy B. to tell – buying C. to tell – to buy D. telling – buying
8. Many vegetables, especially leafy green ones, are _____ sources of calcium.
A. numerable B. a lot C. rich D. attractive
9. The sentence “*The quick brown fox jumps over the lazy dog*” _____ all 26 letters in the English alphabet.
A. utilizes B. consumes C. writes D. uses

10. Valentina Tereshkova, _____ was born in 1937, is the first woman to fly and orbit in space.
A. she B. which C. who D. that
11. Each member of the family has a small bowl and _____ which allow him or her to take food from the table throughout the meal.
A. knives B. pans C. pots D. chopsticks
12. If you put those sweets in your cola, the bottle _____ explode.
A. must B. ought C. might D. should
13. Yuri Gagarin was in orbit in a spaceship _____ moved around the Earth at the speed of more than 17,000 miles per hour.
A. which B. at which C. it D. this
14. On the Cao Lau noodles in Hoi An were some meat _____ mixed with fried noodles served with vegetables and bean sprouts.
A. parts B. cuts C. slices D. shares
15. Be patient. You can't _____ to learn a foreign language in a week.
A. consider B. think C. believe D. expect
16. The semester is almost over and we're all burning _____ before exams.
A. the midnight lamp B. the lamp
C. the oil D. the midnight oil
17. One special feature of cuisine in Southern Vietnam is short cooking time which aims to _____ the freshness of food.
A. save B. store C. protect D. remain
18. The main _____ of this drink are wine, orange juice and bitters.
A. components B. ingredients C. parts D. compositions
19. The computer program is _____ to the needs of individual users.
A. adaptable B. reasonable C. available D. accessible
20. Drinking enough water is a vital part _____ it keeps your body functioning properly.
A. because B. or C. but D. although
21. You _____ see a Yeti if you go to the Himalayas.
A. would B. might C. had to D. must
22. Her new boss is so bad that he does never take _____ of her extra hours of work, that's why she need to change her job now.
A. into investigation B. into account C. consideration D. account
23. If I could speak Spanish, I _____ next year studying in Mexico.
A. would have spent B. would spend C. will spend D. had spent
24. Once we get to the hotel, let's just _____ quickly and then do a bit of sightseeing.
A. check in B. turn up C. set down D. make up
25. Dogs have a keen sense of _____.
A. flowers B. smell C. food D. ability
26. Kate, with _____ I studied in the middle school, is now a student in Canada.
A. whose B. whom C. that D. who

27. Your doctor, _____ advice you ought to listen to, is a clever man indeed.
A. whose B. which C. who D. whom
28. Interesting movements have been launched to attract the _____ of a large number of youths.
A. participant B. participating C. participate D. participation
29. Not every student is aware of _____ of the English language.
A. its importance B. the importance C. importance D. an importance
30. I paid _____ attention, and I didn't hear what the others were saying.
A. much B. a lot of C. little D. a little

IV. Replace the underlined phrasal verb in each sentence with a one-word verb.

- You will soon pick up health when you get to the seaside.
- He has laid aside some money so that he will be comfortable in his old age.
- He told me that he would bring out a new album the next month.
- We looked over the house again before we decided we would rent it.
- The council has failed to deal with the problem of homelessness in the city.
- Andrew Carnegie helped to set up about 3000 public library all over the United States, Canada, Britain, and others.
- My old school has been pulled down to make room for a new and larger one.
- Did you find out whether there are any seats left for the show?
- I wonder who first came up with the idea of a supermarket.
- As I kept my feet wet, I went down with a terrible cold last week.

V. Use the infinitives given in the correct form to finish the sentences.

- The plant (to ran)_____ by the head engineer for a fortnight before a new director (appoint)_____.
- Here you (to be)_____ at last! I (to wait)_____ for you for twenty minutes.
- He hated (to bother)_____ with trifling matters when he had many more important things (to deal)_____ with.
- She would never miss a chance (to show)_____ her efficiency, she was so anxious (to like)_____ and (to praise)_____.
- The idea was too complicated (to express)_____ in just one paragraph.

VI. Fill in the blank using the words in the box.

gain	marks	on	recreational	footsteps
when	ceremony	associate	activity	objection

Perhaps the most common type of tourism is what most people (1)_____ with traveling: recreation tourism. This is (2)_____ people go to a place that is very different from their regular day-to-day life to relax and have fun. Beaches, theme parks and camp grounds are often the most common places regularly visited by (3)_____ tourists.

If the (4)_____ of one's visit to a particular place is to get to know its history and culture then this type of tourism is known as cultural tourism. They may attend festivals and ceremonies in order to (5)_____ a better understanding of the people, their beliefs and their practices.

For tourists who want to see wildlife or take the joy of just being in the middle of the nature, nature tourism is the answer. Ecotourism and nature treks are all part of this kind of tourism. Bird watching, for example, is one activity that nature tourists are fond of doing. What (6)_____ this kind of tourism is that it has low impact (7)_____ the local community.

Religious tourism is another type of tourism where people go to a religious location or locations to follow the (8)_____ of their founder or to attend a religious (9)_____.

Medical or health tourism is a relatively new type of tourist (10)_____ where the main focus of the travel is improving one's health, physical appearance or fitness.

VII. Read the passage below and decide which answer A, B, C or D fits each numbered gap.

After a long day at work, nothing is better than a good (1)_____. Just like on the Earth, in space an astronaut goes to bed at a certain time, then wakes up and prepares for work again. There are a few differences though. Space has no "up" or "down", but it does have (2)_____. As a (3)_____, astronauts are weightless and can sleep in (4)_____ orientation. However, they have to (5)_____ themselves so they don't float around and bump into something. Space station crews usually sleep in (6)_____ bags located in small crew cabins. Each crew cabin is just big enough for one person.

Generally, astronauts are scheduled for eight hours of sleep at the end of each mission day. (7)_____ on the Earth, though, they may wake up in the middle of their sleep period to use the toilet, or stay up late and look out of the window. Different things such as excitement or (8)_____ can disrupt an astronaut's sleep (9)_____. During their sleep period, astronauts have (10)_____ having dreams and nightmares.

- | | | | |
|----------------------|--------------------|---------------------|----------------------|
| 1. A. night's sleeps | B. sleep of night | C. night sleep | D. night's sleep |
| 2. A. microgravity | B. gravity | C. law of gravity | D. none of gravity |
| 3. A. product | B. conclusion | C. result | D. reason |
| 4. A. any | B. quite | C. no | D. some |
| 5. A. keep | B. fix | C. attach | D. relate |
| 6. A. sleeper | B. slept | C. sleep | D. sleeping |
| 7. A. Like | B. Unlike | C. Alike | D. Liking |
| 8. A. homesickness | B. motion sickness | C. morning sickness | D. sleeping sickness |
| 9. A. example | B. design | C. pattern | D. arrangement |
| 10. A. presented | B. showed | C. described | D. reported |

VIII. Read the passage and choose the correct answer to each question.

We will probably never know who first sold a beef inside a bun, but there are lots of contenders for having invented something similar.

Genghis Khan and his army of Mongol horsemen used to snack on raw beef which they kept underneath their saddles. They also ground meat from lamb or mutton. This was fast food for busy warriors on horseback at that time. When the Mongols invaded Russia, the snack became

known as “Steak Tartare”. In the 17th and 18th centuries trade between Germany and Russia gave rise to the “Tartare steak”, while the “Hamburg steak” became popular with German sailors along the New York City harbor.

It’s speculated that the first “Hamburger steak” was served at Delmonico’s Restaurant in New York City in 1834, but not in a bun. In 1885 Charlie “Hamburger” Nagreen served flattened meatballs between two slices of bread. As late as 1904 Fletcher Davis of Athens, Texas, attracted much attention when he sold his hamburgers at the St. Louis World’s Fair. Davis’s claim to having originated the hamburger has been supported by both McDonalds and Dairy Queen.

Brothers Frank and Charles Menches may also have made a major contribution to hamburger history: they sold ground pork sandwiches at the Erie Country Fair in New York, but one day in 1885, they were forced to use chopped beef because their butcher had run out of pork. They mixed in some coffee and brown sugar to beef p the taste and sold their “Hamburger Sandwiches”. The name “Hamburger” came from Hamburg, New York, the location of the fair.

1. What was the Menches’ contribution to hamburger history?
 - A. They began to use chopped pork.
 - B. They changed the taste of pork.
 - C. They began to ground pork for sandwiches.
 - D. They used another meat and added flavors.
2. Which of the following is NOT stated about the Mongols in paragraph 2?
 - A. They kept lambs and mutton nearby.
 - B. They used to eat non-cooked meat.
 - C. They occupied the Russian territories.
 - D. They used to eat while riding a horse.
3. Where did “hamburger” get its name from?

A. A place	B. The Germans	C. A man	D. A fair
------------	----------------	----------	-----------
4. Which of the following is stated in the passage?
 - A. Hamburger was first served in Germany.
 - B. Sailors brought hamburger steak to New York.
 - C. Tartar stake became popular in the 17th century.
 - D. Minced beef appeared in the 15th century.
5. Whom was “hamburger steak” invented by, according to paragraph 3?

A. Fletcher Davis	C. Delmonico
C. Charlie “Hamburger” Nagreen	D. McDonalds

IX. Rewrite the following sentences using a relative clause.

1. Rod Lee has won an Oscar. I know his sister.

2. Is this the style of hair? Your wife wants to have it.

3. A man answered the phone. He said Tom was out.

4. 7.05 is the time. My plane arrives then.

5. Max isn't home yet. That worries me.

6. Do you know the building? The windows of the building are painted green.

7. Last week I went to see the house. I used to live in it.

8. I don't know the girl's name. She's just gone into the hall.

9. Be sure to follow the instructions. They are given at the top of the page.

10. Hoan Kiem Lake is a historical place. Its water is always blue.

KEY**UNIT 1****A. PHONETICS AND PHONOLOGY**

- I.** 1. A 2. B 3. D 4. A 5. C
II. 1. A 2. B 3. C 4. D 5. B

B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

- I.** 1. immorality 2. irregularity 3. inequality 4. discomforts
 5. misfortune 6. criminal 7. endangered 8. unpleasant
 9. arrival 10. Admission 11. unfaithful 12. unrecognizable
 13. unconvincing 14. memorable 15. warmth
- II.** 1. A 2. A 3. C 4. D 5. A
 6. B 7. D 8. C 9. C 10. B
 11. D 12. A 13. B 14. B 15. C
 16. D 17. C 18. D 19. B 20. D
- III.** 1. come up with 2. put through 3. artisans 4. attraction
 5. specific region 6. remind 7. look around 8. craft
 9. setup 10. take
- IV.** 1. Before 2. while 3. so that 4. because 5. While
 6. although 7. because 8. as soon as 9. Although 10. so that
- V.** 1. Ocean 2. explorer 3. searching 4. Christianity 5. pineapples
 6. mixed 7. necklace 8. earn 9. races 10. serious
- VI.** 1. turned – down 2. looked through 3. keep up with
 4. passed down 5. gets up 6. set off
 7. lived on 8. deal with 9. closed down
 10. come back

C. READING

- I.** 1. representing 2. materials 3. fear 4. imported 5. brought
 6. However 7. blow 8. shaping 9. works 10. performing
- II.** 1. C 2. A 3. C 4. D 5. A
 6. B 7. C 8. A 9. C 10. D

D. WRITING

- I.** 1. The princess was thought to have written the book herself.
 2. I can't lift this table unless you help me.
 3. Even if you offer me double the salary, I won't stay in this job.
 4. It is believed that the coins were buried for safe keeping.
 5. If you eat so fast, you will get in indigestion.

6. I wish you were going to Ann's party.
7. Sam got his face punched at a football match.
8. If the missing money was found, what would you do?
9. Jackson was banned (from playing) for the next two matches.
10. If you come this way, you'll see if Mr Francis is in.

- II.**
1. A student who has studied English for a few years may have a vocabulary of thousands of words.
 2. Between formal and colloquial English there is unmarked English, which is neither so literary and serious as formal English, nor so casual and free as colloquial English.
 3. He bought a jeep although his friend advised him against it.
 4. Though good writing requires general and abstract words as well as specific and concrete ones, it is the latter that make writing vivid, real and clear.
 5. It was raining so hard that they could not work in the fields.
 6. The politician is concerned with successful elections, whereas the statesman is interested in the future of his people.
 7. Although the results of the experiment were successful, the school refused to give any help.
 8. He chose to study computer science because of the good employment prospects.
 9. If Mary hadn't walked so slowly, she would have caught the train.
 10. In the event of his not coming, the meeting will be put off till next week.

PART 3: TEST YOURSELF

- I.**
- | | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|-------|
| 1. A | 2. D | 3. B | 4. A | 5. C |
| 6. D | 7. C | 8. A | 9. C | 10. B |
- II.**
- | | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. D | 2. A | 3. A | 4. B | 5. B |
| 6. B | 7. C | 8. D | 9. C | 10. C |
| 11. C | 12. A | 13. A | 14. B | 15. B |
- III.**
- | | | | |
|--------------------|------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| 1. expectation | 2. swimming | 3. writing | 4. odourless |
| 5. service | 6. attentively | 7. troublesome | 8. noticeable |
| 9. fixtures | 10. unforgivable | 11. disagreement | 12. disappearance |
| 13. misinformation | 14. injustice | 15. inconvenience | |
- IV.**
1. Where did you get the information about Disneyland Resort?
 2. What time did you get out of bed this morning?
 3. I'll read this leaflet to see what activities are organized at this attraction.
 4. They're going to publish a guidebook to different beauty spots in Viet Nam.
 5. I'm thinking with pleasure about the weekend.
- V.**
- | | | | | |
|---------|----------|----------|---------------|----------|
| 1. home | 2. which | 3. down | 4. surprising | 5. tool |
| 6. rely | 7. shape | 8. being | 9. because | 10. that |
- VI.**
- | | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|------|
| 1. A | 2. C | 3. B | 4. A | 5. D |
|------|------|------|------|------|

UNIT 2

A. PHONETICS AND PHONOLOGY

- I.** 1. D 2. A 3. A 4. D 5. B
6. D 7. A 8. A 9. C 10. B
- II.** 1. A 2. B 3. C 4. D 5. A

B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

- I.** 1. A 2. C 3. B 4. C 5. C
6. B 7. C 8. D 9. C 10. C
11. D 12. D 13. B 14. A 15. B
- II.** 1. the best 2. trendier
3. nicer 4. the narrowest (hoặc most narrow)
5. farther (hoặc further) 6. harder
7. the noisiest 8. more dangerous
9. the nearest 10. the most interesting
- III.**
1. especially 2. natural 3. picturesque
4. attraction 5. popular 6. busiest
7. delightful 8. dynamic 9. flowing
10. ideal
- IV.**
1. look ... up 2. thought ... over
3. put ... down 4. lived up to
5. grew up 6. showed round
7. turned down 8. gets on with
9. look forward to 10. turned ... off

C. READING

- I.** 1. described 2. Therefore 3. According 4. more 5. makes
6. and 7. can 8. located 9. However 10. busier
- II.** 1. D 2. B 3. C 4. A 5. C
6. B 7. A 8. D 9. C 10. A
- III.** 1. F 2. T 3. F
4. F 5. T 6. F

D. WRITING

I. The enormous 28-metre figure of Jesus gazing across the East Sea with outstretched arms is located at the Southern end of Small Mountain. Built in 1971, this giant Jesus rests on a 10 metre-high platform. The interior of the statue is hollow and contains a spiral staircase of 129 steps, ascending from the foot of the statue to its neck. The two shoulders of the figure are

balconies, each able to accommodate up to six people, which offer a splendid view of the Surrounding landscape. This is the largest sculpture in Southern Viet Nam. Recent construction a pathway has made the 30-minute hike up the mountain more pleasant and the panoramic view along the way is magnificent.

PART 3: TEST YOURSELF

I.

- | | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|-------|
| 1. D | 2. C | 3. B | 4. A | 5. C |
| 6. C | 7. B | 8. C | 9. D | 10. A |

II.

- | | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|------|
| 1. A | 2. A | 3. B | 4. C | 5. D |
|------|------|------|------|------|

III.

- | | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. C | 2. A | 3. A | 4. B | 5. C |
| 6. A | 7. B | 8. D | 9. B | 10. A |
| 11. C | 12. B | 13. A | 14. D | 15. B |

IV.

- | | | |
|------|------|------|
| 1. T | 2. F | 3. T |
| 4. F | 5. T | 6. F |

V.

- | | | | | |
|------------------|-------------|-----------|------------------|---------------|
| 1. integrate | 2. national | 3. main | 4. financial | 5. increasing |
| 6. multinational | 7. think | 8. iconic | 9. entertainment | 10. create |

VI.

- | | | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|------|------|
| 1. D | 2. C | 3. A | 4. F | 5. E | 6. B |
|------|------|------|------|------|------|

VII.

- | | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|------|
| 1. A | 2. B | 3. C | 4. D | 5. B |
|------|------|------|------|------|

VIII.

- | | |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. is the worst hotel (than) | 2. go on with your work |
| 3. is more exciting than | 4. are five big shopping malls |
| 5. is taller than | 6. think it over |

UNIT 3

A. PHONETICS AND PHONOLOGY

I.

- | | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|------|
| 1. D | 2. B | 3. A | 4. A | 5. B |
|------|------|------|------|------|

II.

- | | | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|------|------|
| 1. D | 2. B | 3. C | 4. A | 5. A | 6. D |
|------|------|------|------|------|------|

B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

I.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|----------------|----------------|-----------------|
| 1. civilized | 2. exposure | 3. sleepless | 4. potage |
| 5. correspondence | 6. unavoidable | 7. infrequency | 8. confidential |
| 9. depth | 10. disability | | |

II.

1. They don't know where to put the sofa.
2. The rules didn't specify who to speak in case of an emergency.
3. Huyen My wondered how to ride the scooter.
4. Let us decide when to start the project.
5. Could you tell me where to find a good hotel?
6. We must find out what to do next.
7. A good dictionary tells you how to pronounce the words.
8. They are not sure who to meet at the entrance.

9. She can't remember when to turn off the oven.

10. Does he know what to look for?

- III.** 1. bored 2. confused 3. tired 4. angry
5. disappointed 6. frustrated 7. delighted 8. worried
9. confident 10. embarrassed

- IV.** 1. D 2. D 3. D 4. B 5. A
6. A 7. B 8. C 9. C 10. C
11. A 12. D 13. A 14. B 15. D
16. B 17. B 18. D 19. D 20. C

C. READING

- I.** 1. with 2. be 3. grades 4. pressure
5. competition 6. feel 7. like 8. parents
9. make 10. once
- II.** 1. more 2. have 3. about 4. many 5. suffer
6. form 7. can 8. ways 9. because 10. avoid

D. WRITING

- I.** 1. The instructor warned the sportsman not to repeat that mistake.
2. The assistant asked me to leave my address with the secretary.
3. The manager told the client to phone him (*hoặc* her) for an answer the next (*hoặc* following) day.
4. Mr. John told his wife not to be so silly.
5. Tom asked the girl when she had had that picture taken.
6. Tom suggested going somewhere for a cup of coffee after class.
7. John asked Marry why she didn't wear her hair a little longer.
8. Ann asked her brother what he was planning to do the next day.
9. She asked her boyfriend if it was true that his father had fought in the previous war.
10. He said that he didn't understand why she had refused to join them on the trip.
- II.** 1. looks exactly like 2. that belongs to you
3. am really enjoying working 4. means I take
5. cycling group consists of 6. you think is going to
7. I am measuring (the width of) 8. never remembers
9. survival depends on its ability 10. are you thinking about

PART 3: TEST YOURSELF

- I.** 1. disconnected 2. existence 3. allowance 4. unpolluted
5. variety 6. satisfaction 7. systematic 8. sweetens
9. residential 10. knowledgeable
- II.** 1. B 2. C 3. B 4. C 5. B
6. C 7. B 8. D 9. B 10. B

- | | | | | | |
|-------------|---|------------|------------|----------|------------|
| | 11. C | 12. C | 13. D | 14. A | 15. B |
| | 16. D | 17. C | 18. D | 19. B | 20. C |
| III. | 1. A | 2. D | 3. C | 4. B | 5. B |
| | 6. A | 7. B | 8. C | 9. D | 10. D |
| IV. | 1. use | 2. another | 3. posting | 4. Rude | 5. because |
| | 6. hard | 7. on | 8. check | 9. to do | 10. or |
| V. | 1. B | 2. A | 3. A | 4. C | 5. C |
| VI. | 1. B | 2. C | 3. B | 4. D | |
| | 5. B | 6. B | 7. B | 8. B | |
| VII. | 1. My mother told me that she would take me to the zoo the following day. | | | | |
| | 2. Jane asked Bill when he expected to finished his assignment. | | | | |
| | 3. The man asked the boy to show him the way to the bank. | | | | |
| | 4. Mr. John told his wife not to be so silly. | | | | |
| | 5. The photographer asked me to give a smile | | | | |
| | 6. Ann asked her friend to help her to make a decision. | | | | |
| | 7. The nurse asked the child to be a good girl and to sit quietly for five minutes. | | | | |
| | 8. My sister asked me if I was crazy. | | | | |
| | 9. She asked me if I had ever seen a flying saucer. | | | | |
| | 10. James asked if I wanted her to send that letter for me. | | | | |

UNIT 4

A. PHONETICS AND PHONOLOGY

- | | | | | | |
|------------|------|------|------|------|-------|
| I. | 1. A | 2. B | 3. C | 4. D | 5. D |
| II. | 1. C | 2. A | 3. B | 4. D | 5. C |
| | 6. C | 7. A | 8. D | 9. B | 10. B |

B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

- | | | | | | |
|-------------|-------------------------|-----------|------------------|---------------------------------|--------------------|
| I. | 1. B | 2. B | 3. C | 4. C | 5. A |
| | 6. D | 7. B | 8. D | 9. A | 10. C |
| II. | 1. didn't use to be | | 2. used to write | 3. used to play | |
| | 4. didn't use to travel | | 5. used to walk | 6. didn't use to swim | |
| | 7. used to watch | | 8. used to climb | 9. didn't use to buy | |
| | 10. used to shop | | | | |
| III. | 1. home | 2. unique | 3. houses | 4. historical | 5. characteristics |
| IV. | 1. has been | | 2. worked | 3. moved-have been | |
| | 4. have already gone | | 5. wore | 6. have move-got | |
| | 7. have been | | 8. played | 9. has become | |
| | 10. have enjoyed-lived | | 11. have had | 12. have lived | |
| | 13. went | | 14. stayed | 15. haven't seen-hasn't visited | |

C. READING

- | | | | | | |
|-------------|---------|----------|------------|---------|------------|
| I. | 1. most | 2. been | 3. England | 4. by | 5. started |
| | 6. pop | 7. songs | 8. in | 9. that | 10. famous |
| II. | 1. A | 2. B | 3. B | 4. C | 5. D |
| | 6. D | 7. A | 8. C | 9. D | 10. B |
| III. | 1. B | 2. D | 3. C | 4. B | 5. A |

D. WRITING

- I.**
2. Jane used to have a lot of friends but she doesn't know many people now.
 3. She didn't use to read newspapers but she reads newspapers every day now.
 4. She used to travel a lot but she doesn't go away much now.
 5. She used to play volleyball but now she plays badminton.
 6. She didn't use to love cooking but now she likes to cook Chinese dishes.
 7. She used to wear make – up but now she doesn't wear make – up at all.
 8. She didn't use to drink tea but she likes it now.
- II.**
2. I wish I could fly a plane.
 3. I wish I had a key.
 4. I wish Ann were here.
 5. I wish I were taller.
 6. I wish I didn't have to work tomorrow.
 7. I wish you didn't shout all the time. It's so annoying.
 8. I wish I could go to the party.
 9. I wish I had a computer to get access to the Internet.
 10. I wish the weather were better today.
- III.**
1. I didn't know about the change of the plan.
 2. We used to live in Bristol.
 3. My friend won the competition.
 4. Did the Romans build this wall?
 5. She wishes she could play the piano.
 6. We went to Africa in October.
 7. I was having (hoặc eating) (my) breakfast when Susan rang.
 8. The spacecraft had lights on it.
 9. I was wearing my old coat.
 10. I didn't make a mistake.

PART 3: TEST YOURSELF

- | | | | | | |
|-------------|----------|----------|------------|--------------------|--------------|
| I. | 1. D | 2. C | 3. A | 4. C | 5. A |
| | 6. C | 7. C | 8. A | 9. C | 10. B |
| II. | 1. B | 2. D | 3. A | 4. B | 5. D |
| III. | 1. raise | 2. heads | 3. another | 4. middle – center | 5. after |
| | 6. as | 7. wins | 8. will | 9. period | 10. exchange |

- IV.** 1. for 2. for 3. to 4. about
5. for 6. of 7. for
- V.** 1. hatred 2. happiness 3. comedian 4. excitement 5. sympathized
6. noisy 7. energetic 8. bored 9. emotional 10. feelings
- VI.** 1. C 2. A 3. C 4. B 5. D
6. A 7. D 8. D 9. B 10. C
- VII.** 1. C (could) 2. D (got) 3. C (for) 4. A (did)
5. D (dropped) 6. D (shook) 7. D (playing) 8. B (fall)
- VIII.** 1. I were 2. it stopped 3. they lived 4. I knew 5. Ann were
6. they hurried up 7. we didn't have to 8. it weren't
9. I could 10. you slowed down 11. I hadn't said
12. I had taken 13. I hadn't had to 14. we hadn't gone
15. I had gone
- IX.** 1. which 2. Despite 3. when 4. begin 5. housework
6. sheep 7. activities 8. where 9. was 10. effective
- X.** 1. B 2. D 3. B 4. A 5. A
6. C 7. B 8. B 9. C 10. D
- XI.** 1. B 2. A 3. C 4. D 5. A
- XII.** 1. Did you use to eat sweets when you were small?
2. She wishes she spent her vacation in Ho Chi Minh City.
3. They never used to drink coffee when they lived in America.
4. He used to have a lot of money, but now he doesn't.
5. The boys wish they won the football match.
6. Latin used to be an international language.

UNIT 5

A. PHONETICS AND PHONOLOGY

- I.** 1. B 2. A 3. C 4. D 5. B
II. 1. A 2. B 3. D 4. C 5. B

B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

- I.** 1. treasures 2. belongings 3. burial 4. wonders 5. man-made
6. chamber 7. tomb 8. ramps 9. spiral 10. mysterious
- II.** 1. enjoyed 2. is taught 3. is being considered 4. has taught
5. is built 6. hasn't been examined 7. were served
8. has gone, has been 9. will surprise 10. annoyed
- III.** 1. New students are always welcomed by the teacher.
2. English is spoken all over the world.
3. The phonograph was invented by Thomas Edison in 1877.

4. Two children were found in the forest by the police.
5. Your order will be sent as soon as possible.
6. The problem is being studied carefully by the scientists.
7. The horse was being ridden by Pat Murphy.
8. The robbers have just been arrested by the police.
9. We were told that Sue had born her baby.
10. This room can be used after 5 p.m.

- | | | | | | |
|------------|----------------|--------------|---------------|------------------|--------------|
| IV. | 1. recognition | 2. religious | 3. suggestion | 4. unforgettable | 5. enjoyment |
| | 6. entrance | 7. financial | 8. geological | 9. contestants | 10. wooden |
| V. | 1. A | 2. C | 3. A | 4. D | 5. A |
| | 6. D | 7. A | 8. D | 9. C | 10. C |
| | 11. D | 12. A | 13. B | 14. D | 15. B |

C. READING

- | | | | | | |
|------------|---------------|-------------|--------------|-------------|-------------|
| I. | 1. attracting | 2. as | 3. different | 4. anywhere | 5. in front |
| | 6. few | 7. to visit | 8. from | 9. pours | 10. proud |
| II. | 1. religious | 2. built | 3. mountain | 4. during | 5. first |
| | 6. lasts | 7. pray | 8. couples | 9. formed | 10. spot |

D. WRITING

- I.**
 1. He is known to be armed.
 2. The man is believed to have been killed by terrorists.
 3. The company is thought to be planning a new advertising campaign.
 4. The President was reported to have suffered a heart attack.
 5. The man is alleged to have been driving at 110 miles an hour.
 6. The expedition is known to have reached the South Pole in May.
 7. There is said to be a secret tunnel between them.
 8. She is considered to have been the best singer that Australia has ever produced.
 9. The weather is expected to be good tomorrow.
 10. The Prime Minister and his wife are believed to have separated.
- II.**
 1. People are making progress in science day after day.
 2. A French architect designed the palace.
 3. They have paved the road in front of my house.
 4. You can see that they haven't washed the dishes.
 5. They will not increase our salaries this year.
 6. Didn't they build that theatre two years ago?
 7. They may discuss the problem again.
 8. They have offered my brother a well – paid job.
 9. People reported that the war started again in South American.
 10. He told me that his football team had played well last season.

PART 3: TEST YOURSELF

- I.** 1. B 2. C 3. B 4. D 5. B
- II.** 1. A 2. B 3. D 4. C 5. C
- III.** 1. B 2. A 3. D 4. A 5. A
6. B 7. D 8. B 9. D 10. C
11. B 12. C 13. D 14. D 15. D
16. B 17. B 18. B 19. C 20. B
- IV.** 1. be told 2. repeated 3. be wrapped 4. forgotten 5. been discovered
6. sew 7. been replaced 8. cost 9. whisper 10. be polluted
- V.** 1. river 2. between 3. including 4. attractions 5. botanical
6. lung 7. protected 8. scientific 9. recognized 10. as
- VI.** 1. B 2. C 3. A 4. D
- VII.** 1. B. frightening → frightened 2. C. were took → were taken
3. A. helped → were helped 4. B. composing → composed
5. D. announcing → announced 6. A. → Bỏ been
7. D. invented → been invented 8. C. accompany → accompanied
9. A. was giving → was given 10. B. worry → worried

VIII.

1. The building is reported to have been badly damaged by the fire.
2. The Greens had their carpet cleaned.
3. He is believed to have special knowledge which may be useful to the police.
4. The footballer is supposed to be earning ten million pounds a year by journalists.
5. The damage is reported to be extensive.
6. The game was being watched outside the stadium on a huge screen.
7. Holidaymakers continue to be attracted to the south coast.
8. Keith Jones has been described as the world's greatest guitarist.
9. Robert always hated being teased by other children.
10. Marry should have been offered a drink when she arrived. / A drink should have been offered to Mary when she arrived.

UNIT 6

A. PHONETICS AND PHONOLOGY

- I.** 1. A 2. B 3. C 4. B 5. A
- II.** 1. A 2. B 3. A 4. B 5. C

B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

- I.** 1. It was unreasonable of them to complain about the exam results.
2. It's simple to put up the shelves.
3. It was confident of Hung to present his ideas in front of the committee.
4. It was surprised for us to get the scholarships.
5. It was impolite of her to criticize him in front of his friends.

6. It was brave of Anna to spend the night in the old house alone.
7. It was interesting to hear such a wonderful performance.
8. It was very kind of you to give presents to street children before the new school year.
9. It is necessary to learn English now.
10. It is so important to preserve our living environment.

- II.** 1. A 2. A 3. C 4. C 5. D
 6. D 7. C 8. C 9. A 10. D
- III.** 1. on-in 2. from 3. in 4. into 5. of
 6. from-by 7. On-on 8. with 9. for 10. past-on-to
- IV.** 1. had already graduated 2. had 3. were singing
 4. had seen 5. had forgotten 6. was playing
 7. lived 8. wanted 9. were studying 10. was working

C. READING

- I.** 1. who 2. named 3. entrance 4. campus 5. background
 6. Especially 7. period 8. called 9. political 10. competitions
- II.** 1. C 2. B 3. A 4. D 5. A
 6. B 7. C 8. D 9. A 10. D

D. WRITING

- I.** 1. It was kind of them to support the victims after the disaster.
 2. It is necessary to value the improved living conditions we have today.
 3. It was stupid of you to cross the road without looking left and right.
 4. It is afraid to go into the lift alone.
 5. It is important for all of us to follow the instructions carefully.
 6. It is certain to be able to build the country into a powerful one.
 7. It is confident to speak English with the foreigners.
 8. It was kind of them to show us the way to train station.
 9. It was very clever of him to use a long stick to get some fruits.
 10. It is not easy for you to find a parking space in the city centre.
- II.** 1. The conversation takes place on the school's 60th anniversary.
 2. Our grandparents used to live in an extended family.
 3. Because it explains a lot about how the school was in the past.
 4. The roof was made of tiles and some tiles were broken. The window frames were made of wood and some of them were missing.
 5. They can learn that they are lucky to have such great learning facilities nowadays.
 6. My mother is a sympathetic woman. She always cares about how we feel.
 7. The boys are willing to do what you want them to. They are really obedient.
 8. Having students work in groups, she hoped they could learn to be cooperative.
 9. She is tolerant with her children even when they misbehave.
 10. Nowadays the nuclear family is becoming more common in the cities.

PART 3: TEST YOURSELF

- I.** 1. B 2. C 3. D 4. A 5. D
- II.** 1. artifacts 2. coupons 3. fashionable 4. families 5. straw
6. period 7. childhood 8. books 9. goods 10. Wages
- III.** 1. G 2. B 3. D 4. H
5. F 6. C 7. E 8. A
- IV.** 1. D (was) 2. C (to visit - to have visited)
3. B (significantly) 4. D (has improved) 5. C (had spent)
- V.** 1. for – never 2. since – ever
3. for – since 4. since – ever
5. for – never 6. for – never – ever
7. since 8. for – never
9. for – since 10. since – never
- VI.** 1. appeared 2. been 3. entertainment
4. actually 5. interested 6. international
7. useful 8. to see 9. interactive
10. communication
- VII.** 1. A 2. B 3. C 4. C 5. D
6. D 7. A 8. B 9. C 10. A
- VIII.** 1. C 2. A 3. B 4. D 5. A
- IX.** 1. was 2. school 3. classrooms 4. and 5. where
6. to 7. between 8. have 9. The 10. There
- X.** 1. The adults must take responsibility for leading the family.
2. If we do not have forgiveness, we will not live happily in an extended family with many members.
3. Nguyen Sieu Primary School in Ha Noi has introduced traditional games into their curriculum recently.
4. The school would like to offer a gentle form of relaxation after hours of study.
5. The students from the fifth grade play traditional games without any instruction from the teachers.
6. Some students are enjoying “Cat and Mouse game” while others are interested in playing blind man’s bluff.
7. The school authorities want to increase students’ affection for school so that each day at school is full of happiness.
8. Family members should support each other during times of trouble.
9. We have the need to love and to be loved so the family is normally the place where love is expressed.
10. It is certain that laughter in a positive way to release tensions, and gain a close relationships.
- XI.** 1. It’s better to avoid traveling during the rush hour.
2. The joke (that) I told Michael made him laugh.
3. Let him do what he wants.

4. We enjoy lying on the beach all day.
5. Would you like to go for a walk?
6. I regret taking your advice. - I regret having taken your advice.
7. I'll never forget seeing Nelson Mandela.
8. I couldn't help laughing at Wendy's letter.
9. Do you want me to phone you this evening?
10. I'm looking forward to seeing them again.
11. I'd rather not to go out tonight.
12. I advised Jack to put his money in the bank.
13. You can't stop me doing what I want.
14. Would you mind not interrupting me all the time?
15. My father allowed me to use his car.

THE FIRST TERM TEST

I.	1. A	2. A	3. C	4. B	5. B
II.	1. B	2. D	3. C	4. B	5. C
III.	1. B	2. D	3. C	4. B	5. D
	6. B	7. C	8. B	9. A	10. A
	11. B	12. A	13. A	14. C	15. A
	16. D	17. D	18. C	19. A	20. C
IV.	1. C	2. B	3. C	4. B	5. D
V.	1. recent	2. included	3. allowance	4. get	5. increasing
	6. put	7. to	8. as	9. what	10. respond
VI.	1. sources	2. hands	3. consumers	4. was delivered	5. on
	6. Sharing	7. parts	8. their	9. looks	10. losing
VII.	1. D	2. C	3. C	4. B	5. A
	6. C	7. C	8. A	9. C	10. A
VIII.	1. C	2. D	3. C	4. B	5. A
IX.	1. out of	2. on with	3. down on	4. away from	5. back on
	6. up to	7. out of	8. in with	9. away	10. up with

UNIT 1

A. PHONETICS AND PHONOLOGY

I.	1. D	2. D	3. C	4. C	5. C
II.	1. D	2. D	3. C	4. D	5. C

B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

- | | | | | | |
|-------------|--|---------------|------------------|---------------|--------------|
| I. | 1. a | 2. some | 3. any | 4. some – any | 5. an |
| | 6. some | 7. a – a | 8. some | 9. some | 10. any |
| II. | 1. don't go | 2. makes | 3. is | 4. hears | 5. will make |
| | 6. will bury | 7. won't be | 8. doesn't start | 9. won't let | 10. goes |
| III. | 1. processed | 2. disgusting | 3. served | 4. appetizing | 5. mixed |
| | 6. made | 7. delicacy | 8. smoky | 9. best | 10. tasty |
| IV. | 1. D | 2. C | 3. D | 4. D | 5. D |
| | 6. C | 7. A | 8. A | 9. C | 10. B |
| | 11. C | 12. B | 13. A | 14. A | 15. C |
| | 16. C | 17. D | 18. B | 19. A | 20. D |
| V. | 1. B | 2. C | 3. D | 4. D | |
| | 5. B hoặc C (B. unless => if hoặc C. doesn't pass => pass) | | | | |
| | 6. D | 7. A | 8. A | 9. B | 10. D |

C. READING

- | | | | | | |
|-------------|--------------|---------------|---------|-------------|------------|
| I. | 1. food | 2. recipes | 3. meat | 4. espresso | 5. cooking |
| | 6. barbecues | 7. Aboriginal | 8. emu | 9. cookery | 10. bush |
| II. | 1. B | 2. C | 3. A | 4. C | 5. A |
| | 6. C | 7. B | 8. D | 9. A | 10. D |
| III. | 1. talking | 2. feelings | 3. meal | 4. eat | 5. habit |
| | 6. drink | 7. wine | 8. meat | 9. seems | 10. common |

D. WRITING

- I.**
1. If you're a vegetarian, you won't eat meat.
 2. If you live in a cold country, you won't like hot weather.
 3. If you're a teacher, you will have to work very hard.
 4. If you do a lot of exercise, you will stay fit and healthy.
 5. If you're a mechanic, you will understand engines.
 6. If you read newspapers, you will know what's happening in the world.
- II.**
1. It is very important to eat healthy foods.
 2. Let's have spaghetti and pizza tonight.
 3. The onion needs to be peeled and sliced.
 4. If you don't follow these safety instructions, you may get burnt.
 5. This is the first time (that) my aunt has ever tasted sushi.

PART 3: TEST YOURSELF

- | | | | | | |
|------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| I. | 1. B | 2. A | 3. A | 4. A | 5. B |
| II. | 1. C | 2. C | 3. C | 4. A | 5. A |
| | 6. A | 7. C | 8. D | 9. D | 10. B |
| | 11. C | 12. D | 13. A | 14. C | 15. B |
| | 16. D | 17. B | 18. A | 19. A | 20. B |

- III.** 1. varies 2. characterized 3. ingredients 4. shrimps 5. flavors
6. Dishes 7. cuisine 8. sophisticatedly 9. livestock 10. influence
- IV.** 1. experts 2. unhealthy 3. Lots 4. like 5. regularly
6. nearly 7. do 8. much 9. diet 10. becoming
- V.** 1. any 2. any 3. some-any 4. any 5. some
6. any 7. any 8. some 9. a 10. a
- VI.** 1. few 2. little 3. some 4. much 5. few
6. little 7. Many 8. Many 9. much 10. Most
- VII.** 1. rains, will not go 2. does not read, will not pass
3. do not argue, will lend 4. take, will not arrive
5. does not buy, will be 6. does not tidy up, will not help
7. do not play, will not come 8. eat, will not lose
9. do not make, will not love 10. do not hurry, will not catch
- VIII.** 1. unaware 2. on 3. of 4. either 5. and
6. as 7. with 8. about (*hoặc* with) 9. of 10. in

UNIT 8

A. PHONETICS AND PHONOLOGY

- I.** 1. B 2. A 3. D 4. A 5. D
II. 1. A 2. D 3. B 4. B 5. A

B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

- I.** 1. travel 2. journey 3. tour 4. cruise 5. voyage
6. trip 7. flight 8. journey 9. tour 10. trip
- II.** 1. ø – the 2. ø - the – ø 3. ø – the 4. ø – the (a) – ø 5. ø
6. ø - ø – the 7. the – the 8. ø – an 9. the – an 10. ø
- III.** 1. D 2. A 3. D 4. B 5. C
6. A 7. D 8. D 9. C 10. A
11. A 12. D 13. B 14. B 15. C

C. READING

- I.** 1. A 2. B 3. D 4. A 5. C
6. B 7. D 8. C 9. A 10. B
- II.** 1. important 2. can 3. from 4. necessary 5. aspects
6. transportation 7. of 8. lights 9. for 10. why
- III.** 1. Because an artificial water way opened in 1761 and it joined a coal-mining area with the port of Manchester.
2. Because they wore strange clothes, had no real homes and often drank too much beer.
3. They carry heavy goods for industry.
4. Because it links to the Trent Navigation to carry goods from inland factories to the sea.

5. Because in the mid 19th century, the new railways became the most modern form of transport.

D. WRITING

- I.**
1. You can't borrow my dictionary unless you bring it back on Monday.
 2. The cost of installation is very high, but solar domestic heating systems are economical to use.
 3. Solar panels are placed on the roof of a house and the Sun's energy is used to heat water.
 4. I don't agree with a lot of his teaching methods. However, he is a good teacher.
 5. We'd better not waste water, or we won't have enough to drink sooner or later.
 6. The house is quite beautiful. Moreover, the cost is not too high.
 7. Do you want to study more or to look for a job?
 8. You can go home when you've finished this exercise.
 9. I don't get many opportunities to practice my English. Therefore I find it difficult to remember everything I study.
 10. I'm practicing speaking English a lot because I don't want to fail in the oral test.
- II.**
1. I took you for a friend of Anna's, I am sorry.
 2. Busy as she was, she managed to find the time to proofread for me.
 3. I'd rather you did computer science.
 4. It was not until last Monday that he got his visa.
 5. They persisted in saying that I was to blame.
 6. Vietnamese coffee is regarded as one of the best in the world.
 7. Provided you ask me well in advance, I'll be willing to work overtime.
 8. She is a more sympathetic listener than anyone else I know.
 9. Never have I written such a good essay / a better essay than this.
 10. I took it for granted that she would learn how to take shorthand after this course.
- III.**
1. Tourism development may lead to soil erosion, pollution and waste.
 2. Tourism contributes to an increasing carbon footprint and stress and ecosystems.
 3. The infrastructure in a tourist spot cannot satisfy great demand during the peak season.
 4. Tourists may cause a significant effect on the local habitats, especially in the country.
 5. Tourists may be aware of damage which they cause, and the tourism authorities have to take measures to solve the problems.
 6. First tourism creates jobs in the tourism industry and in other sectors such as retail and transportation.
 7. However jobs which are created by tourism are often seasonal and poorly paid.
 8. Second, tourism encourages preservation of traditional customs, handicrafts and festivals, but interaction with tourists can also lead to an erosion of traditional cultures and values.
 9. Finally, ecotourism helps conservation of wildlife by generating funds for maintaining national parks.
 10. Nevertheless, it also causes pollution through traffic emissions, littering and noise.

PART 3: TEST YOURSELF

- I.** 1. B 2. B 3. C 4. D 5. A
6. A 7. B 8. D 9. D 10. C
- II.** 1. the – a 2. the – \emptyset 3. The (a) – a – \emptyset – \emptyset 4. \emptyset – the – \emptyset
5. an – \emptyset – the 6. a 7. The 8. The – the 9. \emptyset – the
10. a – the – a – a – a
- III.** 1. C (will) 2. C (widely) 3. B (stay) 4. B (being picked up)
5. C (aren't) 6. C (to sit) 7. A (Watching)
8. C (old enough) 9. D (it) 10. D (not to fall)
- IV.** 1. A 2. C 3. D 4. B 5. A
6. D 7. B 8. C 9. A 10. B
- V.** 1. A 2. D 3. B 4. C 5. B
- VI.** 1. D 2. A 3. B 4. D 5. B
6. C 7. A 8. C 9. D 10. A
- VII.** 1. F 2. T 3. F 4. T 5. T
- VIII.** 1. am not interested in
2. is the highest mountain in
3. are required to access
4. made up her mind
5. are not into travelling
- IX.** 1. The heated air expands and rises. As a result, an area of low pressure forms over the land.
2. Canada is similar to the United States in that the majority of its people speak English.
3. Governments will most probably not relocate entire cities just because they are in earthquake zones.
4. There were no economy seats available, so they were forced to buy expensive ones.
5. Two experiments were conducted so that the hypothesis could be tested.
6. Middle-class families tend to have person-centered structures, whereas working-class families are usually positional.
Or (Working-class families are usually positional, whereas middle-class families tend to have person-centered structures).
7. Middle-class children do well in most education systems. Working-class children, on the other hand, do relatively poorly.
8. Western Europe has large reserves of fuel. For instance, the UK has a 250-year supply of coal.
9. A duck has webbed feet so that it can swim easily and walk on soft ground.
10. Rail travel is safer than road travel, because far fewer people are killed or injured during train travel.
- X.** 1. Hardly any young engineers were recruited.
2. We have booked five rooms, only two of which have air conditioning.
3. It looks as if / as though Jane will come to the performance late.
4. Had it not been for Mom's help, I couldn't have held a big party.

5. The harder you work, the more successful you are.
6. Such was Fiona's disappointment that she could not keep on working.
7. Competent as / though Richard is / may be in his work, he does not know how to deal with this client.
8. You should not have allowed a four-year-old child to walk home alone.
9. Not until I left home could / did I realize how important the family is / was.
10. Mrs. Green is proud of what her son can contribute / contributes / has contributed to the play.

UNIT 9

A. PHONETICS AND PHONOLOGY

- I.** 1. D 2. A 3. C 4. B 5. D
II. 1. D 2. B 3. D 4. D 5. D

B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

- I.** 1. cleaned 2. would you be able 3. didn't belong 4. won
 5. would you do 6. knew 7. gave 8. stopped
 9. wouldn't come 10. saw
- II.** 1. Alice, whose mother died last year, is my friend.
 2. The boy who threw that stone will be punished.
 3. Ann, who lives next door, is very friendly.
 4. The man who/that you met at the party last night is a famous actor.
 5. There are some words that/ which are very difficult to translate.
 6. I've found the book that/which I was looking for this morning.
 7. Is that the car that/which you want to buy?
 8. Sandra, who you were talking to, works in advertising.
 9. The little girl who/ that sat next to me on the coach ate sweets the whole way.
 10. Lan, whose tape recorder was stolen, is a journalist.
- III.** 1. heart 2. aspect 3. dormitory 4. reputation
 5. level 6. advertisement 7. scenery 8. dictionary
- IV.** 1. h 2. f 3. c 4. d
 5. a 6. b 7. g 8. e
- V.** 1. difficulties 2. improvement 3. reputable 4. advertisements
 5. written 6. qualified 7. hurriedly 8. relaxation
 9. examination 10. reputation

C. READING

- I.** 1. communicate 2. work 3. getting 4. longer
 5. such 6. industries 7. official 8. require
 9. employing 10. choose
- II.** 1. C 2. D 3. B 4. A 5. D
- III.** 1. F 2. T 3. T 4. F 5. F

D. WRITING

- I.** 1. I don't know the name of the woman who / that I spoke to on the phone.
 2. We often go to visit our friends in Bristol, which is only 30 miles away.
 3. This is Mr Carter, who I was telling you about.
 4. That is the room where the meeting is held.

5. I'll always remember the day when I first saw that sight.
6. She was born in Malaysia, where rubber trees grow well.
7. No one knows the school where my uncle taught 10 years ago.
8. Please ask them the time when the train started the trip.
9. New Year's Day is the day when all family members gather and enjoy a family dinner.
10. There are many hotels where tourists can enjoy their holidays.

- II.**
1. If you didn't keep silent, you would wake the baby up.
 2. If you kept talking, you wouldn't understand the lesson.
 3. If I knew her number, I would ring her up.
 4. If I knew the answer, I would tell you.
 5. If we had a map, we wouldn't get lost.

PART 3: TEST YOURSELF

- I.** 1. C 2. B 3. C 4. A 5. D
- II.** 1. C 2. A 3. B 4. D 5. B
6. D 7. B 8. C 9. D 10. D
11. B 12. C 13. A 14. D 15. D
16. D 17. B 18. C 19. A 20. B
21. A 22. A 23. C 24. B 25. B
- III.** 1. removed 2. would keep 3. lived 4. banned
5. would offer 6. got 7. painted 8. changed
9. would you sent 10. weren't
- IV.** 1. D 2. B 3. C 4. A 5. D
6. D 7. C 8. B 9. D 10. A
- V.** 1. globalization 2. international 3. dominant
4. disadvantages 5. multilingual 6. governments
7. communication 8. command 9. quality
10. resources
- VI.** 1. B 2. B 3. A 4. D 5. C
- VII.** 1. in 2. on – in 3. At – in 4. with 5. in
6. to 7. in – on 8. of 9. on – to 10. to
- VIII.** 1. C => that 2. B => who 3. A => Bỏ which 4. A => who
5. C => where 6. C => which 7. B => which 8. A => who
9. B => bỏ in 10. C => that
- IX.** 1. India is the country where the earthquake occurred last month.
2. Bac Giang is the city where I was born and grew up.
3. We have not decided the day when we'll go to London.
4. The man whom I love with all my heart made me sad the most.
5. The thief was caught, that was really good news.
6. The gentleman who was introduced as the most successful businessman was very young.

7. His book, which was punished last year, became the best seller.
8. Neil Armstrong, who walked on the moon, lived in the USA.
9. Nam, who learns in our class, is very intelligent.
10. Ha Long, which I visited last week, has grown into a big over the past few years.

UNIT 10

A. PHONETICS AND PHONOLOGY

- | | | | | | |
|------------|------|------|------|------|------|
| I. | 1. B | 2. D | 3. A | 4. B | 5. D |
| II. | 1. D | 2. D | 3. A | 4. D | 5. A |

B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

- I.** 1. h 2. a 3. f 4. b
 5. c 6. g 7. d 8. e
- II.** 1. published – orbited 2. had used – invented
 3. published – laid – described 4. had worked – invented – launched
 5. became – had been sent 6. became – had been sent
 7. had launched – put 8. launched – had done

III.

1. T		E	L	E	2. S	C	O	P	E			
					Y						3. J	
					S						U	
5. R	6. E		A	R	T	H			7. V			P
I	R				E			E			I	
N	C				8. M	O	O	N	S			T
G	U								U			E
9. S	U	R	F	A	C	E			10. S	T	A	R
		Y										

- IV.** 1. astronauts 2. spacecraft 3. habitable 4. meteorites
5. parabolic 6. orbit 7. weightlessness 8. launched
9. mission 10. microgravity

V. 1. operate 2. comet 3. mission 4. astronaut
5. float 6. microgravity 7. launch 8. orbit
9. spacesuit 10. astronomy

C. READING

- | | | | | | |
|------------|------|------|------|------|-------|
| I. | 1. B | 2. A | 3. D | 4. C | 5. A |
| | 6. B | 7. C | 8. D | 9. B | 10. D |
| II. | 1. D | 2. B | 3. A | 4. B | 5. C |

- III.**
1. It is a gas giant like Jupiter.
 2. Clouds are made of methane, hydrogen, and helium.
 3. Saturn is the least dense planet in our solar system and is made mostly of hydrogen and helium.
 4. Because it is so lightweight and spins so quickly.
 5. Saturn is surrounded by thousands of small rings made of rocks and ice.
- IV.**
1. It was created about 4.7 billion years ago.
 2. Its shape is very close to that of a sphere, not perfectly spherical.
 3. They are land and water.
 4. They are the North Pole and the South Pole.
 5. It's in 24 hours.

D. WRITING

- I.**
1. The film (which / that) the class watched yesterday was about the Apollo 13 space mission.
 2. The astronomer (who / whom / that) we are meeting tonight has discovered three Earth-like planets.
 3. We read about an astronaut who travelled into space in 1961.
 4. When Anousheh Ansari travelled into space as a tourist in 2006, Dennis Tito had become the first space tourist in 2001.
 5. This is the man who works for NASA.
 6. I'm reading an article which is about NASA's plans to return humans to the moon.
- II.**
1. This is the astronaut who visited our school last week.
 2. This is the village where Helen Sharman, the first British astronaut, was born.
 3. Can you talk more about the parabolic flights which / that you took for your training?
 4. This is the museum which / that has some of the best rock collections in the country.
 5. We'll explore inland Sweden and visit the summer house which / that Carin and Ola have built themselves.
 6. This is the year when the first human walked on the moon.
- III.**
1. Pham Tuan is Viet Nam's first astronaut, and Christer Fuglesang is Sweden's first astronaut.
 2. He found that Earth didn't look as big as he thought, no boundaries on Earth could be seen from space we should cooperate to take care of it.
 3. It seemed he didn't enjoy it much since it wasn't fresh.
 4. They talked to him when he was in space and that made him happy.
 5. They think the chance to fly to space is equal for everyone.
 6. He thinks teamwork, social skills, and foreign languages are important for an astronaut.

TEST YOURSELF

- I.**
- | | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|------|
| 1. A | 2. D | 3. B | 4. D | 5. C |
|------|------|------|------|------|
- II.**
1. will be leaving - will be heading
 2. they will be orbiting

3. will be checking - will not be taking
4. will have arrived - will have gone - won't have aged
5. will they be doing
6. will have discovered
7. will have got used to - they will be floating
8. will have found out - will have met
9. will be exploring
10. they will have expanded

- III.**
- | | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. D | 2. B | 3. C | 4. B | 5. C |
| 6. D | 7. B | 8. B | 9. C | 10. D |
| 11. C | 12. B | 13. A | 14. D | 15. C |
| 16. B | 17. B | 18. B | 19. C | 20. B |
| 21. D | 22. C | 23. A | 24. D | 25. B |
| 26. A | 27. D | 28. B | 29. A | 30. D |
- IV.**
- | | | | |
|-----------------|------------------|----------|---------|
| 1. means | 2. possible | 3. on | 4. many |
| 5. that / which | 6. demand / need | 7. carry | 8. fuel |
| 9. another | 10. because | | |
- V.**
- | | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|-------|
| 1. A | 2. A | 3. A | 4. D | 5. B |
| 6. D | 7. C | 8. A | 9. B | 10. D |
- VI.**
- | | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|------|
| 1. A | 2. D | 3. D | 4. B | 5. A |
|------|------|------|------|------|
- VII.**
- | | | | | |
|---------|----------|----------|---------|-----------|
| 1. who | 2. where | 3. whose | 4. whom | 5. when |
| 6. whom | 7. that | 8. when | 9. that | 10. which |
- VIII.**
- | | |
|-------------------|------------------------|
| 1. of => from | 2. have => has |
| 3. into => to | 4. in => from |
| 5. make => making | 6. has => is |
| 7. by => of | 8. beautiful => beauty |
- IX.**
1. The team who / that plays on the left has never won the championship.
 2. Before Neil Armstrong and Buzz Aldrin spoke to President Richard Nixon, they had planted an American flag on the moon.
 3. The ground-breaking space mission (which / that) this article describes is called Rosetta.
 4. Last week they visited a museum where the first artificial satellite is on display.
 5. The task (which / that) the Rosetta mission has is comparable to a fly trying to land on a speeding bullet.
- X.**
1. Nhat Nam was crazy about space.
 2. He had learnt about the universe and had collected lots of books about space.
 3. To show that there are more things in the list but that it's not necessary to list everything.
 4. He wasn't very impressed because he thought the meteorite was like an ordinary piece of rock.
 5. He compares it to a ride on a rollercoaster.

UNIT 11

A. PHONETICS AND PHONOLOGY

- I.** 1. C 2. A 3. A 4. B 5. B
II. 1. B 2. D 3. A 4. B 5. C

B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

- I.** 1. financially 2. individually 3. evaluate 4. facilitators
 5. relax 6. theoretical 7. responsive 8. vision
 9. responsibility 10. sense
- II.** 1. participating 2. humour 3. conducted 4. direction
 5. appointments 6. discussion 7. development 8. seeing
 9. affected 10. unconditionally
- III.** 1. will be assessed 2. will not be evaluated
 3. will also be held 4. will constantly be tailored
 5. will be free 6. will be made
 7. will be built 8. will be demolished
- IV.** 1. who 2. ✓ 3. ✓ 4. whose 5. which
 6. ✓ 7. which 8. ✓ 9. whose 10. who/that
 11. ✓ 12. which / that 13. ✓ 14. who 15. who/that
- V.** 1. A friend of mine, whose father is the manager of a company, helped me to get a job.
 2. Mike won £50,000, half of which he gave to his parents.
 3. The population of London, which was once the largest city in the world, is now falling.
 4. Most of the suggestions which / that were made at the meeting were not very practical, (hoặc Most of the suggestions made at the meeting were not very practical.)
 5. It is a medieval palace, in whose tower the king hid during the civil war. / ..., whose tower the king hid in during the civil war.
 6. I couldn't remember the number of my own car, which made the police suspicious.
 7. Thank you very much for the present (which / that) you sent me.
 8. Dr Andy Todd, (who is) head of Downlands Hospital, has criticized government plans to cut health funding.
 9. All of the boys who are being chosen for the school's football team are under 9. - All of the boys being chosen for the school's football team...
 10. I went to see my nephew Jimmy who(m) I used to look after when he was small.

C. READING

- I.** 1. B 2. A 3. C 4. A 5. D
 6. D 7. C 8. A 9. C 10. B
- II.** 1. affects 2. which 3. percentages 4. took
 5. household 6. involved 7. changed 8. due
 9. doing 10. on

III. 1. D 2. C 3. A 4. C 5. B

D. WRITING

- I.**
1. Ann, who lives next door, is very friendly.
 2. The man who/ that you met at the party last night is a famous actor.
 3. There are some words that/which are very difficult to translate.
 4. The sun, which is one of millions of stars in the universe, provides us with heat and light.
 5. Students whose homework is late will be punished.
 6. I've found the book that/which I was looking for in the morning.
 7. Is that the car that /which you want to buy?
 8. Sandra, who you were talking to, works in advertising.
 9. Lake Prespa, which is on the north Greek border, is a lonely beautiful lake.
 10. The little girl who /that sat next to me on the coach ate sweets the whole way.
- II.**
1. Julia's father, who is over 80, has just come back from a skiing holiday.
 2. The problems faced by the company, which I'll look at in detail in a moment, are being resolved.
 3. She was greatly influenced by her father, who/ whom she adored.
 4. Parents whose children are between four and six are being asked to take part in the survey.
 5. He isn't looking forward to the time when he will have to leave.
 6. The Roman coins, which a local farmer came across in a field, are now on display in the National Museum.
 7. He pointed to the stairs which / that led down to the cellar.
 8. These drugs, which are used to treat stomach ulcers, have been withdrawn from sale.
 9. The singer, who was recovering from flu, had to cancel her concert.
 10. We went to the Riverside Restaurant where I once had lunch with Henry.
 11. My aunt, whose first job was filling shelves in a supermarket, is now a manager of a department store.
 12. John Graham's latest film, which is set in the north of Australia, is his first for more than five years.
 13. The newspaper is owned by the Mears group, whose chairperson is Sir James Hex.
 14. The Master's course, which I took in 1990, is no longer taught.
 15. The minister talked about the plans for tax reform (that / which) he will reveal next month.

PART 3: TEST YOURSELF

- | | | | | | |
|------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| I. | 1. B | 2. D | 3. B | 4. A | 5. C |
| II. | 1. D | 2. D | 3. A | 4. D | 5. C |
| | 6. D | 7. C | 8. B | 9. A | 10. A |
| | 11. D | 12. C | 13. D | 14. B | 15. C |
| | 16. D | 17. B | 18. A | 19. D | 20. B |

- III.** 1. endangered 2. guidance 3. responsive 4. theoretically
5. applicants 6. participation 7. independent 8. necessarily
9. involvement 10. facilitators
- IV.** 1. role 2. with 3. responsibility 4. breadwinner
5. equal 6. opportunity 7. less 8. changing
9. taking 10. sharing
- V.** 1. D 2. B 3. C 4. D 5. D
6. B 7. A 8. C 9. A 10. B
- VI.** 1. D → bỏ it 2. B → whose name 3. A → which
4. C → which 5. C → where 6. D → who
7. D → bỏ “there” 8. B → which 9. B → who
10. B → which
- VII.** 1. A 2. B 3. D 4. B 5. C
6. B 7. A 8. C 9. B 10. B
- VIII.** 1. which / that / Ø 2. which / that
3. which / that / Ø 4. who
5. whom / that / Ø 6. that / Ø
7. whose 8. which
9. that / Ø 10. that / Ø
11. which 12. whose
13. who / whom 14. whom / that / Ø
15. that
- IX.** 1. Is Zedco a company which / that was taken over last year?
2. Felix Reeve, whose tape recorder was stolen, is a journalist.
3. This famous picture, which was damaged during the war, is worth thousands of pounds
4. I don’t know the name of the woman who / that I spoke to on the phone.
5. We often go to visit our friends in Bristol, which is only 30 miles away.
6. This is Mr. Carter, who I was telling you about.
7. They’ve captured all the animals that / which escaped from the zoo.
8. The scientist who discovered a new planet has won the Nobel Prize.
9. The river which flows through Hereford is the Wye.
10. We climbed to the top of the tower from which we had a beautiful view.

UNIT 12

A. PHONETICS AND PHONOLOGY

- I.** 1. B 2. A 3. C 4. A 5. A
II. 1. A 2. C 3. B 4. A 5. A

B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

- I.** 1. B 2. E 3. A 4. F 5. D 6. C
- II.** 1. C 2. C 3. A 4. D 5. A
6. D 7. A 8. C 9. C 10. A
- III.** 1. ship (g) 2. committee (f)
3. school (a) 4. newspaper (c)
5. company (i) 6. TV series (b)
7. shop (e) 8. town (d)
9. tennis match (j) 10. Monastery (h)
- IV.** 1. B 2. B 3. A 4. C 5. C
6. A 7. C 8. B 9. B 10. C
- V.** 1. to help 2. working 3. to study 4. going
5. to join 6. having 7. taking 8. to look
9. asking 10. not studying
- VI.** 1. officers 2. Nutritionists 3. Secondary 4. Accountants
5. Librarians 6. Architects 7. Programmers 8. operators
9. Archeologists 10. Journalists
- VII.** 1. to pull 2. to know 3. being 4. telling
5. to be 6. to do 7. to return, finish 8. worrying
9. to play 10. telling
- VIII.** 1. Despite his wealth, he is not spoiled.
2. Though he had a good salary, he was unhappy in his job.
3. Although the prices are high, my roommates go to the movies every Saturday.
4. Despite (having) a poor memory, she told interesting stories to the children.
5. Although they are poor, they are very generous.
6. In spite of her frequent absence, he has managed to pass the test.
7. Although Lee was sad at losing the contest, she managed to smile.
8. Despite (being on) a diet, my friend ate the chocolate cake.
9. Although he had a headache, he enjoyed the film.
10. In spite of disliking flying, my sister will take a plane.

C. READING

- I.** 1. She is a flight attendant.
2. Her main duties are providing the passengers what they need and making sure they are comfortable.
3. Visiting many countries every year is the advantage of being a flight attendant.
4. If you are really concerned on learning and you take it seriously, you will probably get what you want.
- II.** 1. F 2. T 3. T 4. T 5. F
6. F 7. T 8. F 9. T 10. F
- III.** 1. B 2. C 3. B 4. A 5. B
6. D 7. C 8. B 9. A 10. B

D. WRITING

- I.**
1. In spite of being seriously advised by his teacher, Hung insisted on disturbing the class.
 2. Despite trying several times, Miss Diep couldn't find a taxi.
 3. In spite of feeling tired, he stayed up to keep us company.
 4. Despite liking more holidays, Mr. Vinh doesn't mind going to school.
 5. In spite of the hard work and low wages, he decided to take the job.
 6. Despite not having much time, they came to visit us.
 7. In spite of his age, he still does his gymnastics every morning.
 8. Despite being the boss, she works as hard as her employees.
 9. In spite of having health problems, he is always smiling.
 10. Despite the difficult exam, Kieu Anh got good marks.
- II.**
1. He wasn't promoted in spite of his efforts.
 2. The boss denied bullying the new employee.
 3. Students need some vocational skills before they enter the world of work.
 4. She's a dynamic businesswoman. She has so much energy and focus.
 5. He is such an empathetic nurse that the patients love him.
 6. I feel we have too many academic subjects and not enough time for physical education.
 7. As an opera singer, he has many opportunities perform in the Grand Theatre.
 8. Working as architects, they design buildings.
 9. They have won many big contracts. They are successful businesswomen and businessmen.
 10. Working with skilled craftsmen and craftswomen, i learnt a lot about the art form.

PART 3: TEST YOURSELF

- | | | | | | |
|-------------|--------------------------|------------|----------------------|-------------|-------|
| I. | 1. D | 2. A | 3. A | 4. D | 5. B |
| II. | 1. B | 2. C | 3. D | 4. B | 5. B |
| | 6. B | 7. B | 8. C | 9. B | 10. B |
| | 11. C | 12. A | 13. C | 14. A | 15. B |
| | 16. B | 17. B | 18. A | 19. B | 20. D |
| | 21. D | 22. B | 23. B | 24. C | 25. A |
| | 26. D | 27. B | 28. B | 29. C | 30. C |
| III. | 1. bad | 2. reasons | 3. enjoyable | | |
| | 4. creates | 5. dress | 6. come up | | |
| | 7. talk | 8. heart | 9. being | 10. Despite | |
| IV. | 1. C | 2. B | 3. C | 4. D | 5. A |
| | 6. C | 7. B | 8. D | 9. A | 10. C |
| V. | 1. to avoid, being | | 2. giving, to speak | | |
| | 3. to persuade, to agree | | 4. cleaning, to do | | |
| | 5. shutting, sitting | | 6. sneezing, sitting | | |
| | 7. talking, to finish | | 8. to give, jogging | | |
| | 9. stopping | | 10. to make, rubbing | | |

- VI.** 1. C (going) 2. C (despite / in spite of)
3. D (to meet) 4. A (Despite / In spite of)
5. B (reading)
- VII.** 1. Despite being injured, Mr Thuan managed to finish the race.
2. In spite of having no qualifications for it, he got the job
3. Although I didn't like the CD you have recommended me, I bought it all the same.
4. In spite of her illness / being ill, Thuy went to school.
5. Despite playing well / having played well, we couldn't win the match.
6. In spite of the rain, we enjoyed our holiday.
7. In spite of telling her all the truth, she didn't believe me.
8. Despite not playing well, they won the game.
9. In spite of having all the necessary qualifications, he didn't get the job.
10. In spite of the expensive shirts, people buy them because they are trendy.
- VIII.** 1. The boy finally managed to deal with his peers at the vocational school.
2. She attempted to cooperate with the others in the team to finish the work.
3. He has a talent for fixing things, so he is an excellent mechanic.
4. My father is running a pharmacy. He is a pharmacist.
5. He wants to become a fashion designer. He's very interested in fashion and design.
6. I took into account the pay and the working conditions before I decided to take the job.
7. He has become a professional footballer for the local football team.
8. He has burnt the midnight oil for a long time so it's fair if he gets an A for his final exam.
9. He's a professional singer. With his beautiful voice, he could make a bundle.
10. She dreams of becoming a physicist because she really likes physics.

the second TERM TEST

- | | | | | | |
|-------------|---------------------------------|--|------------|--------------------------|-------|
| I. | 1. D | 2. D | 3. A | 4. C | 5. B |
| II. | 1. D | 2. C | 3. B | 4. D | 5. C |
| III. | 1. A | 2. D | 3. C | 4. C | 5. B |
| | 6. A | 7. A | 8. C | 9. D | 10. C |
| | 11. D | 12. C | 13. A | 14. C | 15. D |
| | 16. D | 17. D | 18. B | 19. A | 20. A |
| | 21. B | 22. B | 23. B | 24. A | 25. B |
| | 26. B | 27. A | 28. D | 29. B | 30. C |
| IV. | 1. recover | 2. saved | 3. publish | 4. examined | |
| | 5. solve | 6. build / establish | | 7. demolished /destroyed | |
| | 8. discover | 9. produced | | 10. had / caught | |
| V. | 1. had been run – was appointed | 2. are – have been waiting | | | |
| | 3. to be bothered – to deal | 4. to show – to be liked – (to be) praised | | | |
| | 5. to be expressed | | | | |

- VI.** 1. associate 2. when 3. recreational 4. objective
5. gain 6. marks 7. on 8. footsteps
9. ceremony 10. activity
- VII.** 1. D 2. A 3. C 4. A 5. C
6. D 7. A 8. B 9. C 10. D
- VIII.** 1. D 2. A 3. A 4. C 5. A
- IX.** 1. Rod Lee, whose sister I know has won an Oscar.
2. Is this the style of hair which your wife wants to have?
3. A man who answered the phone said Tom was out.
4. 7.05 is the time at which/ when my plane arrives.
5. Max isn't home yet which worries me.
6. Do you know the building the windows of which are painted green?
7. Last week I went to see the house in which /where I used to live.
8. I don't know the name of the girl who has just gone into the hall.
9. Be sure to follow the instructions that are given at the top of the page.
10. Hoan Kiem Lake, the water of which is always blue, is a historical place.

CONTENTS

Unit 1:	LOCAL ENVIRONMENT	4
Unit 2:	CITY LIFE	16
Unit 3:	TEN STRESS AND PRESSURE	26
Unit 4:	LIFE IN THE PAST	40
Unit 5:	WONDERS OF VIETNAM.....	52
Unit 6:	VIETNAM: THEN AND NOW	64
THE FIRST TERM TEST		76
Unit 7:	RECIPES AND EATING HABITS	81
Unit 8:	TOURISM	92
Unit 9:	ENGLISH IN THE WORLD	106
Unit 10:	SPACE TRAVEL.....	118
Unit 11:	CHANGING ROLES IN SOCIETY	134
Unit 12:	MY FUTURE CAREER	147
THE SECOND TERM TEST		164